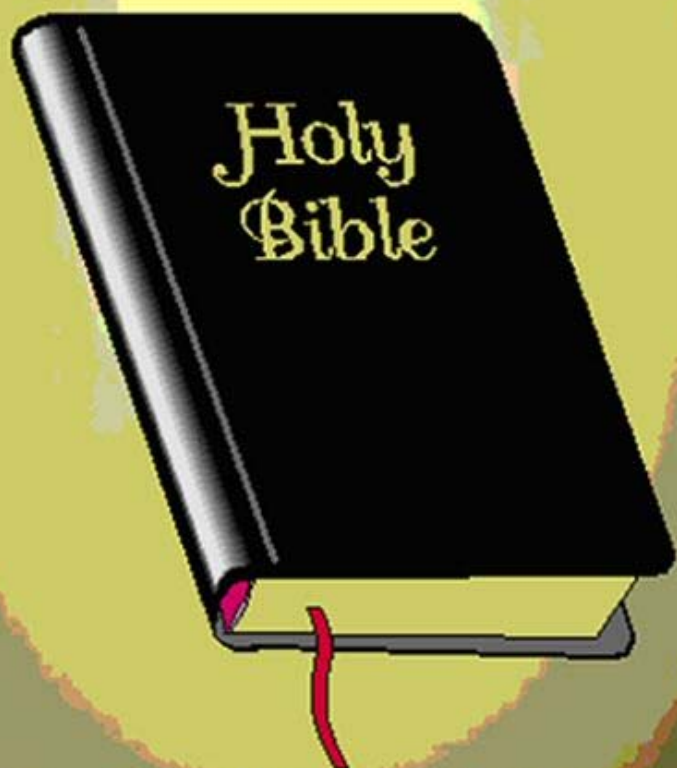


**THE ULTIMATE  
'HOW TO' BOOK**



**BY SYLVIA HUFFNAGLE**

---

---

The Ultimate  
“HOW TO” Book  
Totally Bible

*By*

Sylvia Huffnagle

---

---

## The Ultimate “HOW TO” Book

Copyright © 2004 by Sylvia Huffnagle

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the copyright owner.

Published February 2004 by:

E-BookTime, LLC

6598 Pumpkin Road

Montgomery, AL 36108

[www.e-booktime.com](http://www.e-booktime.com)

Old Testament .....	13
How to worship God: .....	13
How to go further with God: .....	15
How to obtain the blessings or How to be blest: .....	17
How to be one of God's special people: .....	23
How to please the Father heart of God: .....	27
How to remain in close fellowship with the Father: .....	34
How to have a revival: .....	36
How to be empowered to obey the Lord: .....	37
How to walk: .....	39
How to stay on the straight and level path: .....	42
How to repent: .....	44
How to be in the light: .....	47
How to obtain mercy: .....	49
How to understand chastisements and tests: .....	51
How to obtain the rain (spiritual) .....	54
How to prosper: .....	57
How to have long life on the earth: .....	64
How to protect your health: .....	66
How to be sure of divine protection: .....	69
How to have favor with God and man: .....	71

How to have a better life:.....	72
How to obtain the true riches:.....	79
How to obtain wisdom and knowledge:.....	81
How to get understanding:.....	85
How to have divine guidance:.....	88
How to have peace:.....	89
How to have and exercise faith:.....	93
How to be and remain strong:.....	101
How to do warfare:.....	105
How to triumph over your enemies or . . . How to possess the land:.....	113
How to have power over all the enemy:.....	120
How to overcome sin:.....	122
How to come out of trouble:.....	128
How to turn away wrath:.....	131
How to discern a true prophet from a false one:.....	133
How to ask and receive:.....	137
How to pray:.....	141
How to get your prayers answered:.....	150
How to pray for the Saints:.....	155
How to praise the Lord:.....	158
How to keep the Sabbath:.....	161
How to have an empowered church:.....	163

How to raise your children:.....	165
How to be persuasive:.....	168
How to avoid losing the promise land: .....	169
How to miss the mark:.....	170
How to go into captivity:.....	171
How to stumble and fall:.....	173
How to be under a curse:.....	178
How to be wicked: .....	179
How to be a fool:.....	181
How to have a drought: .....	182
How to attain poverty:.....	183
<b>New Testament</b> .....	<b>185</b>
How to be saved:.....	185
How to be justified: .....	187
How to enter the kingdom of God/heaven: .....	188
How to have eternal life:.....	190
How to have a firm foundation:.....	191
How to walk by faith:.....	192
How to sow and reap or how to bear good fruit:.....	194
How to be filled with the fullness of God: ....	200
How to obtain a great reward: .....	201
How to be first:.....	202

How to secure a position of authority in God's kingdom:.....	203
How to become a child of God: .....	204
How to be like your heavenly Father/how to love:.....	206
How to know who your Father is: .....	211
How to see the Father: .....	213
How to have a close relationship with the Father: .....	214
How to receive the Spirit of truth: .....	215
How to be Jesus' disciple:.....	216
How to abide in the vine: .....	218
How to be sanctified: .....	220
How to be transformed:.....	222
How to have lots of virtue and knowledge: .....	223
How to know the truth: .....	224
How to protect yourself from false doctrines: .....	225
How to have joy:.....	227
How to become a new creature: .....	231
How to receive a new heart:.....	232
How to keep (protect) your heart: .....	236
How to have rivers of living water: .....	239
How to be delivered from your burdens: .....	240
How to eligible for forgiveness: .....	241

How to move mountains: .....	243
How to put on the full armor of God: .....	244
How to pray for others: .....	245
How to qualify for the wedding feast: .....	247
How to win the true life of your soul: .....	249
How to build with gold, silver and precious stones: .....	250
How to love your neighbor: .....	252
How to love God: .....	253
How to love others: .....	254
How to show compassion: .....	255
How to become a joyous giver: .....	256
How to be a good Christian: .....	258
How to be working the works of God: .....	263
How to walk: .....	264
How to be humble: .....	266
How to be fully equipped to be God's witness: .....	267
How to be an active member of Christ's body: .....	269
How to be ready for the Lord's return: .....	271
How to get saved, healed and delivered: ....	273
How to be sure you will hear 'well done' at the end of your journey: .....	274



How to reverence your husband: .....	275
How to love your wife: .....	276
How to fulfill the great commission: .....	277
How to be Jesus' brother or sister: .....	278
How to qualify for the kingdom:.....	279
How to win Christ:.....	280
How to press toward the mark:.....	281
How to be a partaker of Christ:.....	282
How to have your soul saved: .....	283
How to suffer patiently:.....	284
How to be a partaker of His divine nature: .....	286
How to live pure: .....	287
How to escape temptation:.....	289
How to be set free from sin:.....	291
How to avoid being misled: .....	293
How to escape the snare: .....	295
How to obtain mercy and help:.....	296
How to be delivered from the god of this world: .....	297
How to be acceptable to God:.....	298
How to be able to tell if teaching is from God: .....	299
How to be able to hear the word of God: .....	300
How to be a star:.....	301

How to <b>avoid fainting</b> :	302
How to <b>avoid falling</b> :	304
How to <b>handle tests and trials</b> :	305
How to <b>be empowered to minister</b> :	309
How to <b>be refreshed</b> :	310
How to <b>be built up in the Lord</b> :	311
How to <b>make Jesus your Lord</b> :	312
How to <b>come out of the world</b> :	313
How to <b>be hated by the world</b> :	315
How to <b>avoid being a stumbling-block</b> :	316
How to <b>avoid becoming a spiritual sluggard</b> :	317
How to <b>dress</b> :	318
How to <b>grow up: (spiritually)</b> :	320
How to <b>accomplish the impossible</b> :	323
How to <b>run the race with patience</b> :	324
How to <b>be a vessel of honor</b> :	325
How to <b>get anointed with the oil of joy</b> :	326
How to <b>know you are in Him</b> :	327
How to <b>discern the spirit of antichrist</b> :	328
How to <b>earn the right to eat of the tree of life</b> :	329
How to <b>win the crown of life</b> :	330
How to <b>be eligible to eat the hidden manna and be given a white stone</b> :	331

How to qualify to have authority over nations: .....	332
How to avoid displeasing Jesus:.....	333
How to be eligible for a white garment and a permanent place in the book of life: .....	334
How to be among those that Jesus acknowledges He loves:.....	335
How to be kept safe from the hour of trial: .	336
How to qualify as a pillar in God's sanctuary and have God's name on you:.....	337
How to obtain wealth, clothing and sight from Jesus: .....	338
How to have joint seating with Jesus:.....	339
How to avoid Babylon's plight:.....	340
How to be clothed in white linen when He comes:.....	341
How to inherit all good things: .....	342
How to remain a member of God's household:.....	343
How to escape chastisement:.....	344
How to worship God uselessly:.....	345
How to miss the wedding feast:.....	346
How to miss the blessings:.....	347
How to miss the rapture:.....	348

How to be excluded from God's rest: .....	350
How to be excluded from the city of God: ...	351
How to keep the good news from benefiting you:.....	352
How to be destroyed from among the people:.....	353
How to be led astray:.....	354
How to produce evil instead of good: .....	355
How to come under the power of sin:.....	356
How to darken your mind:.....	357
How to lose your salvation: .....	358
How to be doomed:.....	360

Text enclosed in [ ] means a comment or insert from the author.

# The Ultimate “How To” Book

## Old Testament

### How to worship God:

Summary -- Worshipping God calls for wholehearted devotion to Him.

1. I Samuel 7:3 And Samuel spake unto all the house of Israel, saying, *If ye do return unto the Lord with all your hearts, then put away the strange gods and Ashtaroth from among you, and prepare your hearts unto the Lord, and serve Him only;* and He will deliver you out of the hand of the Philistines.

2. II Chronicles 15:2 And he went out to meet Asa, and said unto him, Hear ye me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin; *The Lord is with you, while ye be with Him; and if ye seek Him, He will be found of you;* but if ye forsake Him, He will forsake you.

3. Isaiah 1:13,16,17 *Bring no more vain oblations; incense is an abomination unto Me; the new moons and sabbaths, the calling of assemblies, I cannot away with; it is iniquity, even the solemn meeting. Vs 16 Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before Mine eyes; cease to do evil; learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.*

4. Matthew 4:10 Then saith Jesus unto him, Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written, Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and **Him only** shalt thou serve.

5. Luke 1:74,75 That He would grant unto us, *that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve Him without fear, in holiness and righteousness before Him, all the days of our*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*life.*

6. Luke 16:13 No servant can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. *Ye cannot serve God and mammon.*

7. Romans 12:1,2 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that *ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God*, which is your reasonable service. *And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind*, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

8. I Corinthians 7:35 And this I speak for your own profit; not that I may cast a snare upon you, but for that which is comely, and *that ye may attend upon the Lord without distraction.*

9. II Corinthians 11:3 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have *espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ*. But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtilty, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to go further with God:

Summary -- Forsake everything that keeps you back.

1. Genesis 12:1-3 Now the Lord had said unto Abram, get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will show thee: and I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing: and I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: . . . [Luke 14:33 you must forsake all and follow Jesus.]

2. Deuteronomy 10:12,13 And Now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, *but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, to keep the commandments of the Lord, and His statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good.*

3. I Kings 14:8 and rent the kingdom away from the house of David, and gave it thee: and yet thou hast not been as My servant David, who kept My commandments, and *who followed Me with all his heart, to do that only which was right in mine eyes;*

4. I Chronicles 28:7-10 Moreover I will establish his kingdom for ever, *if he be constant to do My commandments and My judgments, as at this day.* [Remember, for Christians, it walk by the Spirit, rather than do My commandments. This only does away with legalism, not God's commandments.] Now therefore in the sight of all Israel the congregation of the Lord, and in the audience of our God, keep and seek for all the commandments of the Lord your God: *that ye may possess this good land, and leave it for an inheritance for your children after you for ever.* And thou,

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

Solomon My son, *know thou the God of thy fathers, and serve Him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind:* for the Lord searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: *if thou seek Him, He will be found of thee;* but if thou forsake Him, He will cast thee off for ever. Take heed now; for the Lord hath chosen thee to build an house for the sanctuary: be strong, and do it.

5. Psalms 37:3 Trust in the Lord, and do good; so shalt thou dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed.

6. Zephaniah 3:12,13 I will also leave in the midst of thee an afflicted and poor people, and they shall trust in the name of the Lord. The remnant of Israel shall *not do iniquity, nor speak lies; neither shall a deceitful tongue be found in their mouth:* for they shall feed and lie down, and none shall make them afraid.

7. I Corinthians 9:25-27 *And every man that striveth for the master is temperate in all things.* Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible. I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air: *but I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection:* lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

8. II Corinthians 6:17,18 *Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing;* and I will receive you, and will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be My sons and daughters, saith the Lord almighty.

9. Philippians 3:8,9 Yea doubtless, and *I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ,* and be found in Him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith:



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain the blessings or How to be blest:

Summary -- Trust and obey God.

1. Genesis 17:1,2 And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the Lord appeared to Abram, and said unto him, I am the almighty God; walk before Me, and be thou perfect. And I will make My covenant between Me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly. [When God says perfect, pertaining to man, he means with all your heart.]
2. Genesis 22:16,17 And said, by Myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for because thou hast done this thing, and has not withheld thy son, thine only son: that in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;
3. Exodus 19:5,6- Now therefore, if ye will obey My voice indeed, and keep My covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto Me above all people: for all the earth is Mine: and *ye shall be unto Me a kingdom of priests*, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel. [See I Peter 2:9 ]
4. Exodus 24:7- And he took the book of the covenant, and read in the audience of the people: and they said, **all that the Lord hath said will we do, and be obedient.**
5. Deuteronomy 7:1-15 When the Lord thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, and hath cast out

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

many nations before thee, the Hittites, and the . . . seven nations greater and mightier than thou; and when the Lord thy God shall deliver them before thee; thou shalt smite them, and utterly *destroy them; thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them: neither shalt thou make marriages with them; . . . For they will turn away thy son from following Me, that they may serve other gods:* so will the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and destroy thee suddenly. But thus shall ye deal with them; *ye shall destroy their altars, and break down their images, and cut down their groves, and burn their graven images with fire. For thou art a holy people unto the Lord thy God: the Lord thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto Himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth.* The Lord did not set His love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: but because the Lord loved you, and because he would keep the oath He had sworn unto your fathers, hath the Lord brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. Know therefore that the Lord thy God, He is God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love Him and keep His commandments to a thousand generations; and repayeth them that hate Him to their face, to destroy them: He will not be slack to him that hateth Him, He will repay him to his face. Thou shalt therefore keep the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments, which I command thee this day, to do them. Wherefore it shall come to pass, **if ye hearken to these judgments, and keep, and do them, that the Lord thy God shall keep unto thee the covenant and the mercy which He swore unto thy fathers: and He will love thee, and bless thee, and multiply thee: He will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which He swore unto thy fathers to give thee. Thou shalt be blessed above all people: there shall not be male or female barren among you, or among your cattle. And the Lord will take away from thee all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, upon thee; but will lay**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

**them upon all them that hate thee.** [God did not change any of this. What He was doing when He sent Jesus was making a way for us to do this - obey Him and be blest. That way is to receive Jesus as your Lord and savior. Receive death to you carnal nature and new life in Jesus. Receive God as your very own personal Father {loving authority}. Receive the Holy Spirit as your guide.]

6. Deuteronomy 10:12 And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, . . .

7. Deuteronomy 11:26,27 Behold, I set before you this day a blessing and a curse; a blessing, if ye obey the commandments of the Lord your God, which I command you this day: and a curse, if ye will not obey the commandments of the Lord your God, but turn aside out of the way which I command you this day, to go after other gods, which ye have not known. [The inevitable result of not trusting and obeying God is to fall into trouble and bad news.]

8. Deuteronomy 28:1,2 And it shall come to pass, if thou shalt hearken diligently unto the voice of the Lord thy God, to observe and to do all His commandments which I command thee this day, that the Lord thy God will set thee on high above all nations of the earth: and all these blessings shall come on thee, and overtake thee . . .

9. Deuteronomy 30: I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that *I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life*, that both thou and thy seed may live: that thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey His voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto Him: **for He is thy life, and the length of thy days:** that thou mayest swell in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, to . . .give them

10. I Kings 8:23 And he said, Lord God of Israel, there is no God

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

like thee, in heaven above, or on earth beneath, *who keepeth covenant and mercy with thy servants that walk before thee with all their heart.* [ I declare to you that this is the only way to have God’s best.]

11. Psalms 5:12 For thou, Lord, wilt bless the righteous; with favour wilt thou compass him as with a shield.

12. Psalms 37:4 *Delight thyself also in the Lord,* and He shall give thee the desires of thine heart.

13. Psalms 81:8-10 Hear, O My people, and I will testify unto thee: O Israel, if thou wilt hearken unto Me; there shall no strange God be in thee; neither shalt thou worship any strange god. I AM the Lord thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt: *open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it.* See I John 5:21

14. Psalms 84:11 For the Lord God is a sun and shield: they Lord will give grace and glory: no good thing will He withhold from *them that walk uprightly.*

15. Psalms 119:2 Blessed are they that *keep His testimonies,* and *that seek Him with the whole heart.*

16. Psalms 128:1 Blessed is every one that *feareth the Lord,* that *walketh in His ways.*

17. Psalms 144:15 Happy is that people, that is in such a case: [blest] yea, happy is that people, whose God is the Lord.

18. Psalms 146:5 Happy is he that hath the God of Jacob for his help, whose hope is in the Lord is God.

19. Proverbs 3:13 Happy is the man that findeth wisdom, and the man that getteth understanding.

20. Proverbs 8:32 Now therefore hearken unto Me, O ye

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

children: for blessed are they that keep My ways. ([Notice in all of the blessed (s) that there is a condition. You do not obtain these blessings just because you believe your sins are covered by the blood. It does say that in Psalm 32:1,2, but to the author, obedience was a ‘given’ or was understood.]

21. Proverbs 28:14 Happy is the man that feareth alway: but he that hardeneth his heart shall fall into mischief.

22. Isaiah 30:15-18 For thus saith the Lord God, the holy one of Israel; in **returning and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength:** and ye would not. But ye said, no we will flee on horses . . . Vs 18 and therefore will the Lord wait, that He may be gracious unto you, and therefore will He be exalted that He may have mercy upon you: for the Lord is a God of judgment: blessed are all they that wait for Him.

23. Isaiah 56:1,2 Thus saith the Lord, keep ye judgment, and do justice: for My salvation is near to come, and My righteousness to be revealed. Blessed is the man that doeth this, and the son of man that layeth hold on it; that keepeth the Sabbath from polluting it, and keepeth his hand from doing any evil. [For us, keeping the Sabbath means what is talked about in Hebrews 4]

24. Isaiah 66:2 For all those things hath mine hand made, and all those things have been, saith the Lord: but to this man will I look, **even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembleth at My word.**

25. Jeremiah 17:7,8 Blessed is the man that *trusteth in the Lord, and whose hope the Lord is.* For he shall be as a tree planted by the waters, and that spreadeth out her roots by the river, and shall not see when heat cometh, but her leaf shall be green; and shall not be careful in the year of drought, neither shall cease from yielding fruit.

26. Luke 11:28 But He said, yea rather blessed are they that

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

hear the word of God, and keep it.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be one of God’s special people:

Summary -- Make covenant with God and serve Him with your whole heart.

1. Exodus 19:5,6 Now therefore, *if ye will obey My voice* indeed, and *keep My covenant*, [For Christians, we promise to trust and obey. He promises to take care of us, if we trust and obey.] then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto Me above all people: for all the earth is mine. And ye shall be unto Me a kingdom of priest, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel. [Refer to I Peter 2:9, Revelation 1:6]

2. Exodus 29:1-5,7,12,18,44,45 And this is the thing that thou shalt do unto them to hallow them, *to minister unto Me in the priest’s office*: take one young bullock, and two rams without blemish, and unleavened bread, and cakes unleavened tempered with oil, and wafers unleavened anointed with oil: of wheaten flour shalt thou make them. And thou shalt put them into one basket, and bring them in the basket, with the bullock and the two rams. And Aaron and his sons thou shalt bring unto the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and shalt wash them with water. And thou shalt take the garments, and put upon Aaron the coat, and the robe of the ephod, and the ephod, and the breastplate, and gird him with the curious girdle of the ephod . . . [For Christians, Jesus is the offering. The unleavened bread is purity, sincerity and truth. I Corinth. 5:8 The garments we are to put on are the armour of light- Romans 13:12 Put on the Lord Jesus Christ. Romans 13:14. Ephesians 4:24, put on the new man and in Ephesians 6:11 put on the full armour of God. In Colossians 3:12, put on the bowels of mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering. In Colossians 3:14, put on charity. In I Peter 5:5, we are told to be clothed with humility. You can see

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

how wearing these garments and having the anointing oil, the Holy Spirit, being cleansed by the blood of the lamb would put you in position to be one of God’s priests.] Vs 7 Then shalt thou take the anointing oil, and pour it upon his head, and anoint him. Vs 12 And thou shalt take of the blood of the bullock, and put it upon the horns of the altar with thy finger, and pour all the blood beside the bottom of the altar. Vs 18 And thou shalt burn the whole ram upon the altar: it is a burnt offering unto the Lord: it is a sweet savour, an offering made by fire unto the Lord. [For Christians, the offering of fire is fervent prayer for ourselves and all the saints and finally for the lost.] Vs 44 And I will sanctify the tabernacle of the congregation, and the altar: I will sanctify also both Aaron and his sons, to minister to Me in the priest’s office. And I will dwell among the children of Israel, and will be their God. [We are the temple of the Holy Ghost. I Corinth. 3:16 **This is how it works!**]

3. Deuteronomy 7:1-16 When the Lord thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, and hath cast out many nations before thee, the Hittites, . . . seven nations greater and mightier than thou; and when the Lord thy God shall deliver them before thee; *thou shalt smite them, and utterly destroy them; thou shalt make no covenant with them, nor show mercy unto them: neither shalt thou make marriages with them;* . . . For they will turn away thy son from following Me, that they may serve other gods: so will the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and destroy thee suddenly. But thus shall ye deal with them; ye shall destroy their altars, and break down their images, and cut down their groves, and burn their graven images with fire. **For thou art an holy people unto the Lord thy God: the Lord thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people** unto Himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth. Vs 9 Know therefore that the Lord thy God, He is God, the faithful God, *which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love Him and keep His commandments* to a thousand generations; . . . Vs 12 Wherefore it shall come to pass, if ye hearken to these judgments, and keep, and do them, that the Lord thy God shall keep unto thee the covenant and the mercy which He sware unto thy fathers: and He will love thee, and



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

bless thee, and multiply thee: He will also bless the fruit of thy womb . . . Vs 14 Thou shalt be blessed above all people: . . . And the Lord will take away from thee all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, upon thee; but will lay them upon all them that hate thee. [This is the way it is. God did not send Jesus so that we can have His benefits without listening to Him. He sent Jesus so that we can do things His way and win.]

4. Deuteronomy 10:12 And now, Israel, *what doth the Lord thy God require of thee*, but **to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul . . .**

5. Deuteronomy 29:9-15 Keep therefore the words of this covenant, and do them, that ye may prosper in all that ye do. Ye stand this day all of you before the Lord your God; your captains of your tribes, your elders, and your officers, with all the men of Israel . . . that thou shouldest enter into covenant with the Lord thy God, and into His oath, with the Lord thy God maketh with thee this day: **that He may establish thee today for a people unto Himself, and that He may be unto thee a God, as He hath said unto thee**, and as He hath sworn unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. Neither with you only do I make this covenant and this oath; but with him that standeth here with us this day before the Lord our God, and also with him that is not her with us this day:

6. Isaiah 66:2 For all those things hath Mine hand made, and all those things have been, saith the Lord: but to this man will I look, **even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembleth at My word.**

7. Jeremiah 7:23 But this thing commanded I them, saying, obey My voice, and I will be your God, and ye shall be My people: and walk ye in all the ways that I have commended you, **that it may be well unto you.**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

8. Jeremiah 32:38-41 And they shall be My people, and I will be their God: And I will give them one heart, and one way, that they may fear Me for ever, for the good of them, and of their children after them: And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from Me. Yea, I will rejoice over them to do them good, and I will plant them in this land assuredly with My whole heart and with My whole soul.

9. Luke 1:17 And He shall go before Him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.

10. II Corinthians 4:2 But *have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully*; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God.

11. I Peter 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; *that ye should shew forth the praises of Him who hath called you out of darkness into His marvelous light*:

12. Revelation 1:5,6 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince of the kings of the earth. Unto Him that *loved us, and washed us from our sins in His own blood, and hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father*; to Him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to please the Father heart of God:

Summary -- Love Him and listen to Him. Be an obedient child.

1. Genesis 1:28 And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth. [This is one of the things that God wants for His children. Of course we learn from other Scripture that when God says, having dominion, He means ‘taking good care of’ or dealing in loving kindness. God gave the kingdom to spiritual man, not carnal man.]

2. Genesis 2:15 And the Lord God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it. [God intended for spiritual man to tend to the things of the earth. Right now the garden we are to dress and keep is our hearts.]

3. Genesis 18:19 For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and *they shall keep the way of the Lord, to do justice and judgment*; that the Lord may bring upon Abraham that which He hath spoken of him.

4. Exodus 19:5,6 Now therefore, if ye will obey My voice indeed, and keep My covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto Me above all people: for all the earth is Mine: and ye shall be unto Me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation. These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.

5. Deuteronomy 26 And it shall be, when thou art come in unto the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee for an inheritance, and possessest it, and dwellest therein; [For Christians this is the

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

promise land that Jesus took for us by fulfilling these conditional promises in the Old Testament. The conditions are still in place because that is the way to live in order to be blest. But through Jesus, Christians have already been given these things. All we need to do is put on the Lord Jesus Christ. Romans 13:14] that thou shalt take of the first of all the fruit of the earth, which thou shalt bring of thy land that the Lord thy God giveth thee, and shalt put it in a basket, and shalt go unto the place which the Lord thy God shall choose to place His name there. And thou shalt go unto the priest that shall be in those days, and say unto Him, [Lord Jesus] I profess this day unto the Lord thy God, that I am come unto the country which the Lord sware unto our fathers for to give us. And the priest shall take the basket out of thine hand, and set it down before the altar of the Lord thy God. And thou shalt speak and say before the Lord thy God, A Syrian ready to perish was my father, and he went down into Egypt, and sojourned there with a few, and became there a nation, great, mighty, and populous: and the Egyptians evil entreated us, and afflicted us, and laid upon us hard bondage: and when we cried unto the Lord God of our fathers, the Lord heard our voice, and looked on our affliction, and our labour, and our oppression: and the Lord brought us forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand, and with an outstretched arm, and with great terribleness, and with signs, and with wonders: and He hath brought us into this place, and hath given us this land, even a land that floweth with milk and honey. [Christians can confess this by applying it spiritually. We were lost and undone wandering in spiritual Egypt. We were in bondage to the evil on.] And now, behold, I have brought the firstfruits of the land, which thou, O Lord, hast given me. And thou shalt set it before the Lord thy God, and worship before the Lord thy God: and thou shalt rejoice in every good thing which the Lord thy God hath given unto thee, and unto thine house, thou, and the Levite, and the stranger that is among you. When thou hast made an end of . . . Then you shall say . . . Look down from thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless thy people Israel, and the land which thou hast given us, as thou swarest unto our fathers, a land that floweth with milk and honey. This day the Lord thy God hath commanded thee to do

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

these statutes and judgments: thou shalt therefore keep and do them with all thine heart, and with all thy soul. Thou hast avouched the Lord this day to be thy God, and to walk in His ways, and to keep His statutes, and His commandments, and His judgments, and to hearken unto His voice: and the Lord hath avouched thee this day to be His peculiar people, as He hath promised thee, *and that thou shouldest keep all His commandments; and to make thee high above all nations which He hath made, in praise, and in name, and in honour; and that thou mayest be an holy people unto the Lord thy God, as He hath spoken.*

6. Isaiah 1:16-20 *Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before mine eyes; cease to do evil; learn to do well; seek judgment, relieve the oppressed, judge the fatherless, plead for the widow.* Come now, and let us reason together, saith the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool. If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land: but if ye refuse and rebel, ye shall be devoured with the sword: for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it. [The Father heart of God wants to bless His children. He has made it clear that we must walk in His ways in order for Him to do this.]

7. Isaiah 5:12,13 And the harp, and the viol, the tabret, and pipe, and wine, are in their feasts: *but they regard not the work of the Lord, neither consider the operation of His hands. Therefore My people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge:* and their honourable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

8. Isaiah 30:15-18 For thus saith the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel; **In returning and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength: and ye would not.** But ye said, No; for we will flee upon horses; therefore shall ye flee: and, We will ride upon the swift; therefore shall they that pursue you be swift. One thousand shall flee at the rebuke of one; at the rebuke

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

of five shall ye flee: till ye be left as a beacon upon the top of a mountain, and as an ensign on an hill. *And therefore will the Lord wait, that He may be gracious unto you, and therefore will He be exalted, that He may have mercy upon you: for the Lord is a God of judgment: blessed are all they that wait for Him.*

9. Isaiah 54: 13-15 And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children. In righteousness shalt thou be established: thou shalt be far from oppression; for thou shalt not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near thee. Behold, they shall surely gather together, *but not by Me: . . .*

10. Isaiah 59:21 As for me, this is my covenant with them, saith the Lord; *My Spirit that is upon thee, and My words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever.*

11. Isaiah 60:21,22 Thy people also *shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of My hands, that I may be glorified.* A little one shall become a thousand, and a small one a strong nation: I the Lord will hasten it in his time.

12. Isaiah 66:2 For all those things hath Mine hand made, and those things have been, saith the Lord: *but to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembleth at My word.*

13. Jeremiah 6:10 To whom shall I speak, and give warning, that they may hear? behold, their ear is uncircumcised, and they cannot hearken: behold, the word of the Lord is unto them a reproach; they have no delight in it. [He wants us to delight in His word.]

14. Jeremiah 23:17 *They say still unto them that despise me,*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*The Lord hath said, Ye shall have peace; and they say unto every one that walketh after the imagination of his own heart, No evil shall come upon you. For who hath stood in the counsel of the Lord, and hath perceived and heard His word? who hath marked His word, and heard it? Behold, a whirlwind of the Lord is gone forth in fury, even a grievous whirlwind: it shall fall grievously upon the head of the wicked. The anger of the Lord shall not return, until He have executed, and till He have performed the thoughts of His heart: in the latter days ye shall consider it perfectly. I have not sent these prophets, yet they ran: I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied. But if they had stood in My counsel, and had caused My people to hear My words, then they should have turned them from their evil way, and from the evil of their doings.*

15. Jeremiah 24:7 *And I will give them an heart to know me, that I am the Lord: and they shall be My people, and I will be their God: for they shall return unto Me with their whole heart.*

16. Jeremiah 32:37 Behold, I will gather them out of all countries, whither I have driven them in Mine anger, and in My fury, and in great wrath; and I will bring them again unto this place, and I will cause them to dwell safely: *And they shall be My people, and I will be their God: and I will give them one heart, and one way, that they may fear Me for ever, for the good of them, and of their children after them: and I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put My fear in their hearts, that they shall not depart from Me. Yea, I will rejoice over them to do them good, and I will plant them in this land assuredly with My whole heart and with My whole soul.*

17. Ezekiel 14:11 That the house of Israel may go no more astray from Me, neither be polluted any more with all their transgressions; *but that they may be My people, and I may be their God, saith the Lord God.*

18. Ezekiel 18:23,24 Have I any pleasure at all that the wicked should die? saith the Lord God: and *not that he should return from*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*his ways, and live?* But when the righteous turneth away from his righteousness, and committeth iniquity, and doeth according to all the abominations that the wicked man doeth, shall he live? All his righteousness that he hath done shall not be mentioned: in his trespass that he hath trespassed, and in his sin that he hath sinned, in them shall he die.

19. Ezekiel 22:26 Her priests have violated My law, and have profaned Mine holy things: *they have put no difference between the holy and profane, neither have they shewed difference between the unclean and the clean*, and have hid their eyes from My Sabbaths, and I am profaned among them. [It should be obvious to all believers who walks by His Spirit and who does not walk by His Spirit. This is the distinction that He is talking about.]

20. Ezekiel 34:15,16 I will feed My flock, and I will cause them to lie down, saith the Lord God. *I will seek that which was lost, and bring again that which was driven away, and will bind up that which was broken, and will strengthen that which was sick*: but I will destroy the fat and the strong; I will feed them with judgment.

21. Ezekiel 43:10,11 Thou son of man, shew the house to the house of Israel, that they may be ashamed of their iniquities: and let them measure the pattern. And if they be ashamed of all that they have done, shew them the form of the house, and the fashion thereof, and the goings out thereof, and the comings in thereof, and all the forms thereof, and all the ordinances thereof, and all the forms thereof, and all the laws thereof: and write it in their sight, that they may keep the whole form thereof, and all the ordinances thereof, and do them. [God gave us the Holy Bible to teach us the way to live. Jesus said we live by every work of God, not just the grace message. God is saying that He wants His teachers to teach the full counsel of God.]

22. Ezekiel 44: 7 In that ye have brought into My sanctuary strangers, uncircumcised in heart, and uncircumcised in flesh, to be in My sanctuary, to pollute it, even My house, when ye offer my



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

bread, the fat and the blood, and they have broken My covenant because of all your abominations. [God says no one should be declare righteous, unless they abide by His covenant. The covenant is that He will be Father and we will be children. He will teach us and take care of us, *we will trust and obey Him*. Uncircumcised means they have not cut off the flesh or carnal nature.]

23. Daniel 9:13 As it is written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us: yet made we not our prayer before the Lord our God, that we might turn from our iniquities, and understand Thy truth. (Amplified Bible says, begged for forgiveness and entreated the favor of the Lord.)

24. Hosea 5:15 I will go and return to My place, *till they acknowledge their offence, and seek My face: in their affliction they will seek me early.*

25. Hosea 6:6 For *I desired mercy*, and not sacrifice; and the *knowledge of God* more than burnt offerings.

26. Zephaniah 3:7 I said, *Surely thou wilt fear Me, thou wilt receive instruction; so their dwelling should not be cut off*, howsoever I punished them: but they rose early, and corrupted all their doings.

27. Malachi 3:18 Then shall *ye return, and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth Him not.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to remain in close fellowship with the Father:

Summary -- Consider yourself totally committed to Him.

1. Hosea 2:18-21 And in that day will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven, and with the creeping things of the ground: and I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to lie down safely. *And I will betroth thee unto Me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto Me in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies. I will even betroth thee unto Me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord.* And it shall come to pass in that day, I will hear, saith the Lord, I will hear the heavens, and they shall hear the earth;

2. John 8:29 And He that sent Me is with Me: the Father hath not left Me alone; for I do always those things that please Him.

3. II Corinthians 6:16-7:1 : And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be My people. *Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you, and will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be My sons and daughters,* saith the Lord Almighty. Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

4. Ephesians 2:14-19 For He is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us; having abolished in His flesh the enmity, even the law of

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in Himself of twain one new man, so making peace; and that He might *reconcile both unto God* in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby: And came and preached peace to you which were afar off, and to them that were nigh. For through Him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father. Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellowcitizens with the saints, and of the household of God; [To have close fellowship with the Father we must receive Jesus. To remain in that fellowship we must abide in Him.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have a revival:

Summary -- Acquire a consuming desire for much more of God and cry out to Him.

1. Isaiah 57: 14,15 And shall say, Cast ye up, cast ye up, prepare the way, take up the stumbling block out of the way of My people. For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a *contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.*

2. Hosea 6:1-3 *Come, and let us return unto the Lord:* for He hath torn, and He will heal us; He hath smitten, and He will bind us up. After two days will He revive us: in the third day He will raise us up, and we shall live in His sight. *Then shall we know, if we follow on to know the Lord:* His going forth is prepared as the morning; and He shall come unto us as the rain, as the latter and former rain unto the earth.

3. Joel 2:15-19 *Blow the trumpet in Zion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly: Gather the people, sanctify the congregation, assemble the elders, gather the children, and those that suck the breasts: let the bridegroom go forth of his chamber, and the bride out of her closet.* Let the priests, the ministers of the Lord, weep between the porch and the altar, and let them say, Spare Thy people, O Lord, and give not Thine heritage to reproach, that the heathen should rule over them: wherefore should they say among the people, Where is their God? Then will the Lord be jealous for His land, and pity His people. Yea, the Lord will answer and say unto His people, Behold, I will send you corn, and wine, and oil, and ye shall be satisfied therewith: and I will no more make you a reproach among the heathen.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be empowered to obey the Lord:

Summary -- Be diligent to follow God’s instruction book.

1. I Kings 8:23 And he said, Lord God of Israel, there is no God like Thee, in heaven above, or on earth beneath, *who keepeth covenant and mercy with Thy servants that walk before Thee with all their heart:* [Walk before Him with all your heart.]

2. Proverbs 4:13-15 *Take fast hold of instruction; let her not go: keep her; for she is thy life. Enter not into the path of the wicked, and go not in the way of evil men. Avoid it, pass not by it, turn from it, and pass away.*

3. Joshua 1:7,8 *Only be thou strong and very courageous, that thou mayest observe to do according to all the law, which Moses my servant commanded thee: turn not from it to the right hand or to the left, that thou mayest prosper whithersoever thou goest. This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.*

4. Matthew 6:33,34 *But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you. Take therefore no thought for the morrow: for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.*

5. Mark 4:24,25 And He said unto them, *Take heed what ye hear: with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you: and unto you that hear shall more be given. For he that hath, to him shall be given: and he that hath not, from him shall be taken even*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

that which he hath.

6. Mark 12:30,31 *And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength.* this is the first commandment. And the second is like, namely this, *Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.* There is none other commandment greater than these.

7. John 6:27 *Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life,* which the Son of man shall give unto you: for Him hath God the Father sealed.

8. John 14:24 *He that loveth Me not keepeth not My sayings:* and the word which ye hear is not Mine, but the Father's which sent Me. [Love Him]

9. Romans 6:5,6 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of His death, we shall be also in the likeness of His resurrection: *Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.*

10. Romans 8:4,5 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, *who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.* For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit.

11. II Corinthians 10:4-6 (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the pulling down of strong holds;) *casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ,* and having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience, when your obedience is fulfilled.

12. James 1:22 *But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only,* deceiving your own selves.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to walk:

Summary -- Walk in righteousness.

1. Leviticus 26:3,4 *If ye walk in My statutes, and keep My commandments, and do them; then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit.*
2. Leviticus 26:23,24 *And if ye will not be reformed by Me by these things, but will walk contrary unto Me; then will I also walk contrary unto you, and will punish you yet seven times for your sins.*
3. I Kings 3:14 *And if thou wilt walk in My ways, to keep My statutes and My commandments, as thy father David did walk, then I will lengthen thy days.*
4. Isaiah 2:5 *O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the Lord.*
5. Amos 3:3 *Can two walk together, except they be agreed?*
6. Micah 4:5 *For all people will walk every one in the name of his god, and we will walk in the name of the Lord our God for ever and ever.*
7. John 8:12 *Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, I am the light of the world: he that followeth Me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.*
8. Romans 6:4 *Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

of the Father, even so we also should *walk in newness of life*.

9. Romans 8:4 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who *walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit*.

10. Romans 13:13,14 *Let us walk honestly, as in the day; not in rioting and drunkenness, not in chambering and wantonness, not in strife and envying. But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.*

11. I Corinthians 7:17 But as God hath distributed to every man, as the Lord hath called every one, so let him walk.

12. II Corinthians 5:7 (*For we walk by faith, not by sight.*)

13. Galatians 5:16 This I say then, *Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh.*

14. Ephesians 2:10 For we are His workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto *good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.*

15. Ephesians 5:2 *And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour.*

16. Ephesians 5:8 For ye were sometimes darkness, but now are ye light in the Lord: *walk as children of light:*

17. Ephesians 5:15 See then that ye *walk circumspectly, not as fools, but as wise,*

18. Colossians 1:10 That ye might *walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing*, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God;

19. Colossians 2:6 : *As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*the Lord, so walk ye in Him:*

20. I Thessalonians 2:12 *That ye would walk worthy of God, who hath called you unto His kingdom and glory.*

21. I John 2:6 He that saith he abideth in Him *ought himself also so to walk, even as He walked.*

22. III John 4:4 I have no greater joy than to hear that my children *walk in truth.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to stay on the straight and level path:

Summary -- Keep your focus on spiritual things or heavenly things and not on this earth.

1. Psalms 5:8 Lead me, O Lord, in Thy righteousness because of mine enemies; make Thy way straight before my face. [Pray.]
2. Proverbs 4:25-27 Let thine eyes look right on, and let thine eyelids look straight before thee. Ponder the path of thy feet, and let all thy ways be established. Turn not to the right hand nor to the left: remove thy foot from evil.
3. Isaiah 26:7 The way of the just is uprightness: Thou, most upright, dost weigh the path of the just.
4. Isaiah 40:3-5 The voice of him that crieth in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make straight in the desert a highway for our God. Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low: and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough places plain: And the glory of the Lord shall be revealed, and all flesh shall see it together: for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it. [This means do not compromise the Word or your integrity, then you will appreciate the glory of the Lord.]
5. Isaiah 42:16 And I will bring the blind by a way that they knew not; I will lead them in paths that they have not known: *I will make darkness light before them, and crooked things straight.* These things will I do unto them, and not forsake them. [It's very important in overcoming to be able to think and see straight. The enemy is wily and can easily fool you otherwise.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

6. Isaiah 45:2,3 I will go before thee, and make the crooked places straight: I will break in pieces the gates of brass, and cut in sunder the bars of iron: And I will give thee the treasures of darkness, and hidden riches of secret places, that thou mayest know that I, the Lord, which call thee by thy name, am the God of Israel.

7. Matthew 3:3 For this is he that was spoken of by the prophet Esaias, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make His paths straight.

8. Matthew 7:14 Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat: Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

9. Luke 3:4-6 And he came into all the country about Jordan, preaching the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins; as it is written in the book of the words of Esaias the prophet, saying, The voice of one crying in the wilderness, Prepare ye the way of the Lord, make his paths straight. Every valley shall be filled, and every mountain and hill shall be brought low; and the crooked shall be made straight, and the rough ways shall be made smooth; and all flesh shall see the salvation of God.

10. Hebrews 12:13 Wherefore lift up the hands which hang down, and the feeble knees; and make straight paths for your feet, lest that which is lame be turned out of the way; but let it rather be healed. {Be strong in the Lord and power of His might.}

11. Colossians 3:1-3 If ye then be risen with Christ, seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. *Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.* For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to repent:

Summary -- Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded.

1. Jeremiah 4:1,2,14 If thou wilt return, O Israel, saith the Lord, *return unto Me: and if thou wilt put away thine abominations out of my sight*, then shalt thou not remove. And thou shalt swear, The Lord liveth, in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness; and the nations shall bless themselves in Him, and in Him shall they glory. O Jerusalem, *wash thine heart from wickedness*, that thou mayest be saved. *How long shall thy vain thoughts lodge within thee?*

2. Jeremiah 6:26 *O daughter of my people, gird thee with sackcloth, and wallow thyself in ashes: make thee mourning, as for an only son, most bitter lamentation: for the spoiler shall suddenly come upon us.*

3. Jeremiah 18:11 Now therefore go to, speak to the men of Judah, and to the inhabitants of Jerusalem, saying, Thus saith the Lord; Behold, I frame evil against you, and devise a device against you: *return ye now every one from his evil way, and make your ways and your doings good.*

4. Jeremiah 44:10 *They are not humbled even unto this day, neither have they feared, nor walked in my law, nor in My statutes, that I set before you and before your fathers.*

5. Lamentations 2:18,19 Their heart cried unto the Lord, O wall of the daughter of Zion, *let tears run down like a river day and night: give thyself no rest; let not the apple of thine eye cease. Arise, cry out in the night: in the beginning of the watches pour out thine heart like water before the face of the Lord: lift up thy hands*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*toward him for the life of thy young children, that faint for hunger in the top of every street. [Be completely sorry for sinning.]*

6. Daniel 9:13 As it is written in the law of Moses, all this evil is come upon us: *yet made we not our prayer before the Lord our God, that we might turn from our iniquities, and understand thy truth.*

7. Matthew 3:2 And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand. (Amplified Version says this word, repent, means to think differently; change your mind, regretting your sins and changing your conduct.)

8. Matthew 4:17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

9. Mark 1:15 And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent ye, and believe the gospel.

10. Mark 6:12 And they went out, and preached that men should repent. [Also Luke 5:32, 13:5]

11. Luke 15:7 I say unto you, that likewise joy shall be in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, more than over ninety and nine just persons, which need no repentance.

12. Romans 2:4 Or despisest thou the riches of His goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that *the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?*

13. II Corinthians 7:10 For *godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation* not to be repented of: but the sorrow of the world worketh death.

14. II Corinthians 12:21 And lest, when I come again, my God will humble me among you, and that I shall bewail many which have sinned already, and have not *repented of the uncleanness*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*and fornication and lasciviousness* which they have committed.

15. James 4:7-9 Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. Draw nigh to God, and He will draw nigh to you. *Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded.* Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy to heaviness. Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and He shall lift you up.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be in the light:

Summary -- Abide in Jesus.

1. Luke 1:69-79 *And hath raised up an horn of salvation for us in the house of His servant David; as He spake by the mouth of His holy prophets, which have been since the world began: That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us; to perform the mercy promised to our fathers, and to remember His holy covenant; the oath which He sware to our father Abraham, that He would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve Him without fear, in holiness and righteousness before Him, all the days of our life. And thou, child, shalt be called the prophet of the Highest: for thou shalt go before the face of the Lord to prepare his ways; to give knowledge of salvation unto His people by the remission of their sins, through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us, to give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.*

2. John 3:16-21 : For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. He that believeth on Him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God. *And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil.* For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reproved. *But he that doeth truth cometh to the light, that his deeds may be made manifest, that*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*they are wrought in God.*

3. John 8:12 Then spake Jesus again unto them, saying, *I am the light of the world: he that followeth Me shall not walk in darkness, but shall have the light of life.*

4. John 12:35,36,46 Then Jesus said unto them, Yet a little while is the light with you. Walk while ye have the light, lest darkness come upon you: for he that walketh in darkness knoweth not whither he goeth. *While ye have light, believe in the light, that ye may be the children of light.* These things spake Jesus, and departed, and did hide Himself from them. Vs 46 *I am come a light into the world, that whosoever believeth on Me should not abide in darkness.*

5. II Corinthians 4:3-6 But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, *lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.* For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord; and ourselves your servants for Jesus' sake. *For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.*

6. Ephesians 5:13,14 But all things that are reprov'd are made manifest by the light: for whatsoever doth make manifest is light. Wherefore He saith, *Awake thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ shall give thee light.*

7. I John 1:7 But if *we walk in the light, as He is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanseth us from all sin.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain mercy:

Summary -- Fear the Lord and cry out for His salvation.

1. Psalms 103:11-18 For as the heaven is high above the earth, so great is His mercy *toward them that fear Him*. As far as the east is from the west, so far hath hH removed our transgressions from us. Like as a father pitieth his children, so the Lord *pitieth them that fear Him*. For He knoweth our frame; He remembereth that we are dust. As for man, his days are as grass: as a flower of the field, so he flourisheth. For the wind passeth over it, and it is gone; and the place thereof shall know it no more. But the mercy of the Lord is from everlasting to everlasting *upon them that fear him*, and his righteousness unto children's children; *To such as keep His covenant, and to those that remember His commandments to do them*. [A definite connection here between fearing Him and keeping His commandments.

2. Isaiah 55:6,7 Seek ye the Lord while He may be found, call ye upon Him while He is near: Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and *let him return unto the Lord, and He will have mercy upon him*; and to our God, for He will abundantly pardon.

3. Matthew 5:7 Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy.

4. Luke 1:49,50 For He that is mighty hath done to me great things; and Holy is His name. And His *mercy is on them that fear Him* from generation to generation.

5. John 3:16,17 For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved.

6. Romans 10:13 For whosoever shall *call upon the name of the Lord* shall be saved.

7. I Peter 2:10 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and He that believeth on Him shall not be confounded. *Unto you therefore which believe* He is precious: but unto them which be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner, and a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offence, even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: whereunto also they were appointed. But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar people; that ye should shew forth the praises of Him who hath called you out of darkness into His marvelous light: Which in time past were not a people, but are now the people of God: which had not obtained mercy, but now have obtained mercy.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to understand chastisements and tests:

Summary -- Our loving Father has to use the circumstances of life to teach us to think and live His way. Hebrews calls it discipline.

1. Judges 3:1-4 Now these are the nations which the Lord left, to prove Israel by them, even as many of Israel as had not known all the wars of Canaan; only that the generations of the children of Israel might know, *to teach them war*, at the least such as before knew nothing thereof; **[For Christians, this is why God doesn't take away all challenges when a person receives Jesus. We must learn to do things God's way. This is our warfare.]** Namely, five lords of the Philistines, . . . And they were to prove Israel by them, to know whether they would hearken unto the commandments of the Lord, which He commanded their fathers by the hand of Moses.

2. Proverbs 2:11,12 My son, despise not the chastening of the Lord; neither be weary of His correction: For whom the Lord loveth He correcteth; even as a father the son in whom he delighteth. **[Passing the test is to not need to be corrected.]**

3. Isaiah 30:11,12 And though the Lord give you the bread of adversity, and the water of affliction, yet shall not thy teachers be removed into a corner any more, but thine eyes shall see thy teachers: And thine ears shall hear a word behind thee, saying, This is the way, walk ye in it, when ye turn to the right hand, and when ye turn to the left. Ye shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth; thou shalt say unto it, Get thee hence. Then shall He give the rain of thy seed, that thou shalt sow the ground withal; and bread of the increase of the earth, and it shall be fat and plenteous: in that day

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

shall thy cattle feed in large pastures.

4. Matthew 7:24,25 : Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of Mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock: And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock.

5. Romans 5:3,4 And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience; and patience, experience; and experience, hope: and hope maketh not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us.

6. II Thessalonians 1:4 So that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of God for your patience and faith in all your persecutions and tribulations that ye endure: Which is a manifest token of the righteous judgment of God, that ye may *be counted worthy of the kingdom of God*, for which ye also suffer: [Paul is talking about refining as gold is refined. This proves your sincerity in wanting God to save you from sin.]

7. James 1:2-4,12 My brethren, count it all joy when ye fall into divers temptations; Knowing this, that the trying of your faith worketh patience. But let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing. Vs 12 Blessed is the man that endureth temptation: for when he is tried, he shall receive the crown of life, which the Lord hath promised to them that love Him.

8. I Peter 1:5-7 Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time. Wherein ye greatly rejoice, though now for a season, if need be, ye are in heaviness through manifold temptations: That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ:

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

9. I Peter 4:1,2 Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, *arm yourselves likewise with the same mind*: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin; *that he no longer should live the rest of his time in the flesh to the lusts of men, but to the will of God.*

10. Hebrews 2:10 For it became Him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their *salvation perfect through sufferings.*

11. Hebrews 12:11 Now no chastening [Amplified Version says discipline.] for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain the rain (spiritual)

Summary -- Thirst after it with all your being. Repent and seek the Lord. Call a solemn assembly and cry out to God.

1. Deuteronomy 11:13,14 And it shall come to pass, if ye shall hearken diligently unto My commandments which I command you this day, to love the Lord your God, and to serve Him with all your heart and with all your soul, that I will give you the rain of your land in his due season, the first rain and the latter rain, that thou mayest gather in thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil. [It works for spiritual rain and spiritual food, too.]

2. Isaiah 30:20-23 And though the Lord give you the bread of adversity, and the water of affliction, yet shall not thy teachers be removed into a corner any more, but thine eyes shall see thy teachers: And thine ears shall hear a word behind thee, saying, This is the way, walk ye in it, when ye turn to the right hand, and when ye turn to the left. Ye shall defile also the covering of thy graven images of silver, and the ornament of thy molten images of gold: thou shalt cast them away as a menstruous cloth; thou shalt say unto it, Get thee hence. *Then shall He give the rain* of thy seed, that thou shalt sow the ground withal; and bread of the increase of the earth, and it shall be fat and plenteous: in that day shall thy cattle feed in large pastures.

3. Isaiah 32:9-18 Rise up, ye women that are at ease; hear My voice, ye careless daughters; give ear unto My speech. Many days and years shall ye be troubled, ye careless women: for the vintage shall fail, the gathering shall not come. Tremble, ye women that are at ease; be troubled, ye careless ones: strip you, and make you bare, and gird sackcloth upon your loins. They shall lament for the teats, for the pleasant fields, for the fruitful

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

vine. Upon the land of My people shall come up thorns and briers; yea, upon all the houses of joy in the joyous city: . . . *Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest.* Then judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness remain in the fruitful field. And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance for ever. And My people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places; [This is the rain and what it will do.]

4. Isaiah 45:8 Drop down, ye heavens, from above, *and let the skies pour down righteousness: let the earth open, and let them bring forth salvation, and let righteousness spring up together; I the Lord have created it.*

5. Isaiah 55:6-13 : Seek ye the Lord while He may be found, call ye upon Him while He is near: Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the Lord, and He will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for He will abundantly pardon. For My thoughts are not your thoughts, neither are your ways My ways, saith the Lord. For as the heavens are higher than the earth, so are My ways higher than your ways, and My thoughts than your thoughts. *For as the rain cometh down, and the snow from heaven, and returneth not thither, but watereth the earth, and maketh it bring forth and bud, that it may give seed to the sower, and bread to the eater: So shall My word be that goeth forth out of My mouth: it shall not return unto Me void, but it shall accomplish that which I please, and it shall prosper in the thing whereto I sent it.* For ye shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap their hands. Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the Lord for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

6. Hosea 6:3 *Then shall we know, if we follow on to know the Lord: His going forth is prepared as the morning; and He shall come unto us as the rain, as the latter and former rain unto the earth.*

7. Joel 2:15-19 15: Blow the trumpet in Zion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly: Gather the people, sanctify the congregation, assemble the elders, gather the children, and those that suck the breasts: let the bridegroom go forth of his chamber, and the bride out of her closet. Let the priests, the ministers of the Lord weep between the porch and the altar, and let them say, Spare thy people, O Lord, and give not thine heritage to reproach, that the heathen should rule over them: wherefore should they say among the people, Where is their God? Then will the Lord be jealous for His land, and pity His people. Yea, the Lord will answer and say unto His people, Behold, I will send you corn, and wine, and oil, and ye shall be satisfied therewith: and I will no more make you a reproach among the heathen: Vs 28,29 And it shall come to pass afterward, that I will pour out My Spirit upon all flesh; and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions: And also upon the servants and upon the handmaids in those days will I pour out My Spirit.

8. Zechariah 10:1,2 Ask ye of the Lord rain in the time of the latter rain; so the Lord shall make bright clouds, and give them showers of rain, to every one grass in the field. For the idols have spoken vanity, and the diviners have seen a lie, and have told false dreams; they comfort in vain: therefore they went their way as a flock, they were troubled, because there was no shepherd. [God provided Jesus to be our Shepherd. Let the church listen to what He says and we will have the rain.]

9. James 5:7 Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain.



# The Ultimate “How To” Book

## How to prosper:

Summary -- Do things God’s way.

1. Leviticus 26:3-13 *If ye walk in My statutes, and keep My commandments, and do them;* then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time: and ye shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land. And ye shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword. [Remember to apply this spiritually. God will help you do spiritual warfare against our enemy, the devil.] . . . For I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and establish My covenant with you. And ye shall eat old store, and bring forth the old because of the new. And I will set My tabernacle among you: and My soul shall not abhor you. And I will walk among you, and will be your God, and ye shall be My people. I am the Lord your God, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, that ye should not be their bondmen; and I have broken the bands of your yoke, and made you go upright.

2. Deuteronomy 4:39,40 Know therefore this day, and consider it in thine heart, that the Lord He is God in heaven above, and upon the earth beneath: there is none else. Thou shalt keep therefore His statutes, and his commandments, which I command thee this day, that it may go well with thee, and with thy children after thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days upon the earth, which the Lord thy God giveth thee, for ever.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

3. Deuteronomy 5:29 O that there were such an heart in them, that they would fear Me, and keep all My commandments always, that it might be well with them, and with their children for ever! 6:3 Hear therefore, O Israel, and observe to do it; that it may be well with thee, and that ye may increase mightily, as the Lord God of thy fathers hath promised thee, in the land that floweth with milk and honey. Vs 18 And thou shalt do that which is right and good in the sight of the Lord: that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest go in and possess the good land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, 7:12-15 Wherefore it shall come to pass, if ye hearken to these judgments, and keep, and do them, that the Lord thy God shall keep unto thee the covenant and the mercy which He sware unto thy fathers: and He will love thee, and bless thee, and multiply thee: He will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which He sware unto thy fathers to give thee. Thou shalt be blessed above all people: there shall not be male or female barren among you, or among your cattle. And the Lord will take away from thee all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, upon thee; but will lay them upon all them that hate thee.

4. Deuteronomy 8:1-3,10,12,17 All the commandments which I command thee this day shall ye observe to do, [Christians can substitute- walk by the Spirit and not by the flesh.] *that ye may live, and multiply, and go in and possess the land* which the Lord sware unto you father. **And thou shalt remember all the way which the Lord thy God led thee . . .** And He humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that He might make thee **know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceeded out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.** Vs 10 When thou hast eaten and art full, then thou shalt bless the Lord thy God for the good land which he hath given thee. Vs 12 Lest when thou hast eaten and art full, and hast built goodly houses, and dwelt therein; . . . Vs 17-19 And thou say in thine heart, my power and the might

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

of mine hand hath gotten me this wealth. **But thou shalt remember the Lord thy God: for it is He that giveth thee power to get wealth, that He may establish his covenant which He sware unto thy fathers, as it is this day.** And it shall be, *if thou do at all forget the Lord thy God, and walk after other gods, and serve them, and worship them, I testify against you this day that ye shall surely perish.*

5. Deuteronomy 10:12 And now, Israel, *what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,*

6. Deuteronomy 14:29 And the Levite, (because he hath no part nor inheritance with thee,) and the stranger, and the fatherless, and the widow, which are within thy gates, shall come, and shall eat and be satisfied; *that the Lord thy God may bless thee in all the work of thine hand which thou doest.*

7. Deuteronomy 26 And it shall be, when thou art come in unto the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee for an inheritance, and possessest it, and dwellest therein; that *thou shalt take of the first of all the fruit of the earth, which thou shalt bring of thy land that the Lord thy God giveth thee, and shalt put it in a basket, and shalt go unto the place which the Lord thy God shall choose to place his name there. And thou shalt go unto the priest that shall be in those days, and say unto him, I profess this day unto the Lord thy God, that I am come unto the country which the Lord sware unto our fathers for to give us.* And the priest shall take the basket out of thine hand, and set it down before the altar of the Lord thy God. And thou shalt speak and say before the Lord thy God, a Syrian ready to perish was my father, and he went down into Egypt, and sojourned there with a few, and became there a nation, great, mighty, and populous: and the Egyptians evil entreated us, and afflicted us, and laid upon us hard bondage: and when we cried unto the Lord God of our fathers, **the Lord heard our voice, and looked on our affliction, and our labour, and our**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

**oppression:** And the Lord brought us forth out of Egypt with a mighty hand, and with an outstretched arm, and with great terribleness, and with signs, and with wonders: and He hath brought us into this place, and hath given us this land, even a land that floweth with milk and honey. And now, behold, I have brought the firstfruits of the land, which thou, O Lord, hast given me. And thou shalt set it before the Lord thy God, and worship before the Lord thy God: *and thou shalt rejoice in every good thing which the Lord thy God hath given unto thee, and unto thine house, thou, and the Levite, and the stranger that is among you.* When thou hast made an end of tithing all the tithes of thine increase the third year, which is the year of tithing, and hast given it unto the Levite, the stranger, the fatherless, and the widow, that they may eat within thy gates, and be filled; then thou shalt say before the Lord thy God, I have brought away the hallowed things out of mine house, . . . *Look down from Thy holy habitation, from heaven, and bless Thy people Israel, and the land which thou hast given us, as Thou swarest unto our fathers, a land that floweth with milk and honey.* And the Lord hath avouched thee this day to be His peculiar people, as He hath promised thee, and that thou shouldest keep all his commandments; and to make thee high above all nations which He hath made, in praise, and in name, and in honour; and that thou mayest be an holy people unto the Lord thy God, as He hath spoken.

8. Joshua 1:7 Only be thou strong and very courageous, that thou mayest observe to do according to all the law, which Moses my servant commanded thee: turn not from it to the right hand or to the left, *that thou mayest prosper whithersoever thou goest.*

9. II Chronicles 26:5 And he sought God in the days of Zechariah, who had understanding in the visions of God: and as long as he sought the Lord, God made him to prosper.

10. Psalms 112:1-3 Praise ye the Lord. Blessed is the man that feareth the Lord, that delighteth greatly in His commandments. His seed shall be mighty upon earth: the generation of the upright

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

shall be blessed. Wealth and riches shall be in his house: and his righteousness endureth for ever.

11. Proverbs 3:9,10 Honour the Lord with thy substance, and with the firstfruits of all thine increase: *So shall thy barns be filled with plenty, and thy presses shall burst out with new wine.*

12. Proverbs 6:10,11 Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep: So shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth, and thy want as an armed man.

13. Proverbs 8:20,21 I (godly wisdom) lead in the way of righteousness, in the midst of the paths of judgment: That I may cause those that love me to inherit substance; and I will fill their treasures.

14. Proverbs 13:4 The soul of the sluggard desireth, and hath nothing: but the soul of the diligent shall be made fat.

15. Proverbs 13:11 Wealth gotten by vanity shall be diminished: but he that gathereth by labour shall increase.

16. Proverbs 19:17 He that hath pity upon the poor lendeth unto the Lord; and that which he hath given will he pay him again.

17. Proverbs 21:5 *The thoughts of the diligent tend only to plenteousness; but of every one that is hasty only to want.*

18. Proverbs 22:4 **By humility and the fear of the Lord are riches, and honour, and life.**

19. Proverbs 28:8 He that by usury and unjust gain increaseth his substance, he shall gather it for him that will pity the poor.

20. Proverbs 28:20 He that hasteth to be rich hath an evil eye, and considereth not that poverty shall come upon him.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

21. Proverbs 28:27 He that giveth unto the poor shall not lack: but he that hideth his eyes shall have many a curse.

22. Malachi 3:10-14 *Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in Mine house, and prove Me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it. And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the Lord of hosts. And all nations shall call you blessed: for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of hosts. Your words have been stout against Me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say, What have we spoken so much against thee? Ye have said, It is vain to serve God: and what profit is it that we have kept His ordinance, and that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of hosts?*

23. Matthew 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

24. Luke 6:38 Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal it shall be measured to you again.

25. II Corinthians 8:9 For ye know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that, though He was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor, that ye through His poverty might be rich.

26. II Corinthians 9:6-11 But this I say, He which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully. Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, so let him give; not grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver. And God is able to make all grace abound toward you; that ye, always having all sufficiency in all things, may abound to every good work: As it is written, He hath dispersed abroad; he hath given to the poor: his

## The Ultimate "How To" Book

righteousness remaineth for ever. Now he that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for your food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness; being enriched in every thing to all bountifulness, which causeth through us thanksgiving to God.

27. Philippians 4:18,19 But I have all, and abound: I am full, having received of Epaphroditus the things which were sent from you, an odour of a sweet smell, a sacrifice acceptable, wellpleasing to God. But my God shall supply all your need according to his riches in glory by Christ Jesus.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have long life on the earth:

Summary -- Let the Scriptures teach you how to LIVE.

1. Deuteronomy 30:20 **That thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey His voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto Him: for He is thy life, and the length of thy days: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.**
2. Psalms 34:12-14 **What man is he that desireth life, and loveth many days, that he may see good? *Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips from speaking guile. Depart from evil, and do good; seek peace, and pursue it.***
3. Psalms 91:14-16 ***Because he hath set his love upon Me, therefore will I deliver him: I will set him on high, because he hath known My name. He shall call upon Me, and I will answer him: I will be with him in trouble; I will deliver him, and honour him. With long life will I satisfy him, and shew him My salvation.***
4. Proverbs 3:1,2,7,8,13-16 **My son, forget not My law; but let thine heart keep My commandments: *For length of days, and long life, and peace, shall they add to thee. Vs 7,8 Be not wise in thine own eyes: fear the Lord, and depart from evil. It shall be health to thy navel, and marrow to thy bones. Happy is the man that findeth wisdom, and the man that getteth understanding. For the merchandise of it is better than the merchandise of silver, and the gain thereof than fine gold. She is more precious than rubies: and all the things thou canst desire are not to be compared unto her. Length of days is in her right hand, and in her left hand riches and honour.***



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. Proverbs 4:10,20-22 Hear, O my son, and receive my sayings; and the years of thy life shall be many. Vs 20 My son, attend to My words; incline thine ear unto My sayings. Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart. For they are life unto those that find them, and health to all their flesh.

6. Proverbs 9:10,11 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: and the knowledge of the holy is understanding. For by Me thy days shall be multiplied, and the years of thy life shall be increased.

7. Proverbs 10:27 *The fear of the Lord prolongeth days: but the years of the wicked shall be shortened.*

8. Proverbs 14:30 *A sound heart is the life of the flesh.* but envy the rottenness of the bones.

9. Proverbs 17:22 *A merry heart doeth good like a medicine.* but a broken spirit drieth the bones.

10. Proverbs 18:21 *Death and life are in the power of the tongue:* and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof.

11. Ephesians 6:1-3 Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right. Honour thy father and mother; (which is the first commandment with promise;) *that it may be well with thee, and thou mayest live long on the earth.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to protect your health:

Summary -- Deal wisely in all your affairs.

1. Deuteronomy 7:1-16 When the Lord thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, and hath cast out many nations before thee, the . . . . seven nations greater and mightier than thou; and when the Lord thy God shall deliver them before thee; thou shalt smite them, and utterly destroy them; *thou shalt make no covenant with them*, nor shew mercy unto them: neither shalt thou make marriages with them; thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son. For they will turn away thy son from following Me, that they may serve other gods: so will the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and destroy thee suddenly. But thus shall ye deal with them; ye shall destroy their altars, and break down their images, and cut down their groves, and burn their graven images with fire. For thou art an holy people unto the Lord thy God: the Lord thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto Himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth. The Lord did not set His love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: But because the Lord loved you, and because He would keep the oath which He had sworn unto your fathers, hath the Lord brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. Know therefore that the Lord thy God, He is God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love Him and keep His commandments to a thousand generations; and repayeth them that hate Him to their face, to destroy them: He will not be slack to him that hateth Him, He will repay him to his face. Thou shalt therefore keep the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments, which I

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

command thee this day, to do them. *Wherefore it shall come to pass, if ye hearken to these judgments, and keep, and do them, that the Lord thy God shall keep unto thee the covenant and the mercy which He sware unto thy fathers:* And He will love thee, and bless thee, and multiply thee: He will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which He sware unto thy fathers to give thee. Thou shalt be blessed above all people: there shall not be male or female barren among you, or among your cattle. *And the Lord will take away from thee all sickness, and will put none of the evil diseases of Egypt, which thou knowest, upon thee;* but will lay them upon all them that hate thee. And thou shalt consume all the people which the Lord thy God shall deliver thee; thine eye shall have no pity upon them: neither shalt thou serve their gods; for that will be a snare unto thee.

2. Psalms 103:2,3 Bless the Lord, O my soul, and forget not all His benefits: Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases;

3. Proverbs 3:7,8 Be not wise in thine own eyes: fear the Lord, and depart from evil. It shall be health to thy navel, and marrow to thy bones.

4. Proverbs 4:20-22 My son, attend to my words; incline thine ear unto My sayings. Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart. *For they are life unto those that find them, and health to all their flesh.*

5. Proverbs 14:30 A sound heart is the life of the flesh: but envy the rottenness of the bones.

6. Proverbs 17:22 A merry heart doeth good like a medicine: but a broken spirit drieth the bones.

7. Proverbs 18:21 Death and life are in the power of the tongue:

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof.

8. Isaiah 33:20-24 Look upon Zion, the city of our solemnities: thine eyes shall see Jerusalem a quiet habitation, a tabernacle that shall not be taken down; not one of the stakes thereof shall ever be removed, neither shall any of the cords thereof be broken. But there the glorious Lord will be unto us a place of broad rivers and streams; wherein shall go no galley with oars, neither shall gallant ship pass thereby. **For the Lord is our judge, the Lord is our lawgiver, the Lord is our king; He will save us.** Thy tacklings are loosed; they could not well strengthen their mast, they could not spread the sail: then is the prey of a great spoil divided; the lame take the prey. *And the inhabitant shall not say, I am sick: the people that dwell therein shall be forgiven their iniquity.*

9. Matthew 8:16,17 When the even was come, they brought unto Him many that were possessed with devils: and He cast out the spirits with His word, and healed all that were sick: That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet, saying, Himself took our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses.

10. John 5:24 Afterward Jesus findeth him in the temple, and said unto him, Behold, thou art made whole: *sin no more, lest a worse thing come unto thee.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be sure of divine protection:

Summary -- Trust and obey The Lord.

1. Psalms 5:11 But let all those that *put their trust in Thee* rejoice: let them ever shout for joy, because Thou defendest them: let them also that *love Thy name* be joyful in Thee.
2. Psalms 34:7 The angel of the Lord encampeth round about them that *fear Him*, and delivereth them.
3. Psalms 37:39,40 But the salvation of the righteous is of the Lord: *He is their strength in the time of trouble. And the Lord shall help them and deliver them: He shall deliver them from the wicked, and save them, because they trust in Him.*
4. Psalm 41:11 By this I know that *thou favourest me*, because mine enemy doth not triumph over me.
5. Psalms 91:1-4, 9-12, 14-16 He that *dwelleth in the secret place of the most High* shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty. *I will say of the Lord, He is my refuge and my fortress: my God; in Him will I trust.* Surely He shall deliver thee from the snare of the fowler, and from the noisome pestilence. He shall cover thee with his feathers, and under His wings shalt thou trust: *His truth shall be thy shield and buckler.* Vs 9 *Because thou hast made the Lord, which is my refuge, even the most High, thy habitation;* there shall no evil befall thee, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling. For He shall give His angels charge over thee, to keep thee in all thy ways. They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a stone. Vs 14 *Because he hath set his love upon Me*, therefore will I deliver him: I will set him on high, *because he hath known My name.* He shall call upon Me,

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

and I will answer him: I will be with him in trouble; I will deliver him, and honour him. With long life will I satisfy him, and shew him My salvation.

6. Psalms 115:11 Ye that fear the Lord, trust in the Lord: He is their help and their shield.

7. Proverbs 4:5,6 *Get wisdom, get understanding: forget it not; neither decline from the words of My mouth. Forsake her not, and she shall preserve thee: love her, and she shall keep thee.*

8. Proverbs 6:20-24 My son, keep thy father's commandment, and forsake not the law of thy mother: *Bind them continually upon thine heart, and tie them about thy neck.* When thou goest, it shall lead thee; when thou sleepest, it shall keep thee; and when thou awakest, it shall talk with thee. *For the commandment is a lamp; and the law is light; and reproofs of instruction are the way of life:* to keep thee from the evil woman, from the flattery of the tongue of a strange woman.

9. Proverbs 10:3 The Lord will not suffer the soul of the righteous to famish: but He casteth away the substance of the wicked.

10. Proverbs 18:10 *The name of the Lord is a strong tower: the righteous runneth into it, and is safe.*

11. Proverbs 19:23 The fear of the Lord tendeth to life: and he that hath it shall abide satisfied; he shall not be visited with evil.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have favor with God and man:

Summary -- Fear God, love truth and be merciful.

1. Proverbs 3:3,4 Let not mercy and truth forsake thee: bind them about thy neck; write them upon the table of thine heart: So shalt thou find favour and good understanding in the sight of God and man.

2. Isaiah 27:11 When the boughs thereof are withered, they shall be broken off: the women come, and set them on fire: *for it is a people of no understanding: therefore He that made them will not have mercy on them, and He that formed them will shew them no favour.* [He was talking about worshipping idols. He shows favour to those who fear Him. To those who revere Him.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have a better life:

Summary -- Make God, god in your life.

1. Leviticus 26:3-13 If ye walk in My statutes, and keep My commandments, and do them; then I will give you rain in due season, and the land shall yield her increase, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. And your threshing shall reach unto the vintage, and the vintage shall reach unto the sowing time: and ye shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. And I will give peace in the land, and ye shall lie down, and none shall make you afraid: and I will rid evil beasts out of the land, neither shall the sword go through your land. And ye shall chase your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword. And five of you shall chase an hundred, and an hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight: and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword. For I will have respect unto you, and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and establish My covenant with you. And ye shall eat old store, and bring forth the old because of the new. And I will set My tabernacle among you: and My soul shall not abhor you. And I will walk among you, and will be your God, and ye shall be My people. I am the Lord your God, which brought you forth out of the land of Egypt, that ye should not be their bondmen; and I have broken the bands of your yoke, and made you go upright.

2. Deuteronomy 4:39,40 Know therefore this day, and consider it in thine heart, that the Lord He is God in heaven above, and upon the earth beneath: there is none else. Thou shalt keep therefore His statutes, and His commandments, which I command thee this day, *that it may go well with thee*, and with thy children after thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days upon the earth, which the Lord thy God giveth thee, for ever.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

3. Deuteronomy 5:29 O that there were such an heart in them, that they would fear Me, and keep all my commandments always, *that it might be well with them*, and with their children for ever!

4. Deuteronomy 6:3 Hear therefore, O Israel, and observe to do it; that it may be well with thee, and that ye may increase mightily, as the Lord God of thy fathers hath promised thee, in the land that floweth with milk and honey.

5. Deuteronomy 7:1-15 When the Lord thy God shall bring thee into the land whither thou goest to possess it, and hath cast out many nations before thee, the Hittites, and the Girgashites, and the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, seven nations greater and mightier than thou; and when the Lord thy God shall deliver them before thee; thou shalt smite them, and utterly destroy them; *thou shalt make no covenant with them*, nor shew mercy unto them: neither shalt thou make marriages with them; thy daughter thou shalt not give unto his son, nor his daughter shalt thou take unto thy son. For they will turn away thy son from following me, that they may serve other gods: so will the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and destroy thee suddenly. But thus shall ye deal with them; ye shall destroy their altars, and break down their images, and cut down their groves, and burn their graven images with fire. For thou art an holy people unto the Lord thy God: the Lord thy God hath chosen thee to be a special people unto Himself, above all people that are upon the face of the earth. The Lord did not set His love upon you, nor choose you, because ye were more in number than any people; for ye were the fewest of all people: but because the Lord loved you, and because He would keep the oath which He had sworn unto your fathers, hath the Lord brought you out with a mighty hand, and redeemed you out of the house of bondmen, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. Know therefore that the Lord thy God, He is God, the faithful God, which keepeth covenant and mercy with them that love Him and keep His commandments to a thousand generations; and repayeth

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

them that hate Him to their face, to destroy them: He will not be slack to him that hateth Him, He will repay him to his face. Thou shalt therefore keep the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments, which I command thee this day, to do them. Wherefore it shall come to pass, if ye hearken to these judgments, and keep, and do them, that the Lord thy God shall keep unto thee the covenant and the mercy which He sware unto thy fathers: and *He will love thee, and bless thee*, and multiply thee: He will also bless the fruit of thy womb, and the fruit of thy land, thy corn, and thy wine, and thine oil, the increase of thy kine, and the flocks of thy sheep, in the land which He sware unto thy fathers to give thee.

6. Deuteronomy 8:3 And He humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that He *might make thee know* that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

7. Deuteronomy 10:12 And now, Israel, *what doth the Lord thy God require of thee*, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,

8. Deuteronomy 30:19,20 I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live: that thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey His voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto Him: for **He is thy life, and the length of thy days**: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.

9. Psalms 25:10 : *All the paths of the Lord are mercy and truth unto such as keep His covenant and His testimonies.*

10. Psalms 34:9,10 O fear the Lord, ye His saints: *for there is no want to them that fear Him.* The young lions do lack, and suffer

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

hunger: *but they that seek the Lord shall not want any good thing.*

11. Psalms 81:9,10 *There shall no strange god be in thee; neither shalt thou worship any strange god. I am the Lord thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt: open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it.*

12. Psalms 84:11,12 *For the Lord God is a sun and shield: the Lord will give grace and glory: no good thing will He withhold from them that walk uprightly. O Lord of hosts, blessed is the man that trusteth in thee.*

13. Psalms 91:4-10 He shall cover thee with his feathers, and under His wings shalt thou trust: His truth shall be thy shield and buckler. Thou shalt not be afraid for the terror by night; nor for the arrow that flieth by day; nor for the pestilence that walketh in darkness; nor for the destruction that wasteth at noonday. A thousand shall fall at thy side, and ten thousand at thy right hand; but it shall not come nigh thee. Only with thine eyes shalt thou behold and see the reward of the wicked. *Because thou hast made the Lord, which is my refuge, even the most High, thy habitation;* there shall no evil befall thee, neither shall any plague come nigh thy dwelling.

14. Psalms 103:1-5 Bless the Lord, O my soul: and all that is within me, bless His holy name. Bless the Lord, O my soul, and forget not all His benefits: Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases; who redeemeth thy life from destruction; who crowneth thee with lovingkindness and tender mercies; who satisfieth thy mouth with good things; so that thy youth is renewed like the eagle's.

15. Psalms 112:1-9 Praise ye the Lord. Blessed is the man that feareth the Lord, that delighteth greatly in His commandments. His seed shall be mighty upon earth: the generation of the upright shall be blessed. Wealth and riches shall be in his house: and his righteousness endureth for ever. Unto the upright there ariseth

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

light in the darkness: he is gracious, and full of compassion, and righteous. A good man sheweth favour, and lendeth: he will guide his affairs with discretion. Surely he shall not be moved for ever: the righteous shall be in everlasting remembrance. He shall not be afraid of evil tidings: his heart is fixed, trusting in the Lord. His heart is established, he shall not be afraid, until he see his desire upon his enemies. He hath dispersed, he hath given to the poor; his righteousness endureth for ever; his horn shall be exalted with honour.

16. Psalms 128:1,2 : Blessed is every one that feareth the Lord; that walketh in His ways. For thou shalt eat the labour of thine hands: *happy shalt thou be, and it shall be well with thee.*

17. Psalms 145:18,19 The Lord is nigh unto all them that call upon him, to all that call upon him in truth. He will fulfil the desire of them that fear him: He also will hear their cry, and will save them.

18. Proverbs 13:3 *He that keepeth his mouth keepeth his life: but he that openeth wide his lips shall have destruction.*

19. Proverbs 16:20 *He that handleth a matter wisely shall find good: and whoso trusteth in the Lord, happy is he.*

20. Proverbs 18:20 A man's belly shall be satisfied with the fruit of his mouth; and with the increase of his lips shall he be filled.

21. Proverbs 24:3-6 *Through wisdom is an house builded; and by understanding it is established: And by knowledge shall the chambers be filled with all precious and pleasant riches. A wise man is strong; yea, a man of knowledge increaseth strength. For by wise counsel thou shalt make thy war: and in multitude of counsellors there is safety.*

22. Isaiah 1:19 *If ye be willing and obedient, ye shall eat the good of the land:*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

23. Isaiah 3:10 *Say ye to the righteous, that it shall be well with him: for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.*

24. Jeremiah 7:23 But this thing commanded I them, saying, Obey My voice, and I will be your God, and ye shall be My people: and walk ye in all the ways that I have commanded you, that it may be well unto you.

25. Amos 5:4 For thus saith the Lord unto the house of Israel, Seek ye Me, and ye shall live:

26. Malachi 3:10,11 : Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in mine house, and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if I will not *open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.* And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the Lord of hosts.

27. Matthew 4:4 But He answered and said, It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.

28. Matthew 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

29. Luke 1:71-75,79 That we should be saved from our enemies, and from the hand of all that hate us; to perform the mercy promised to our fathers, and to remember His holy covenant; the oath which He sware to our father Abraham, that He would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve Him without fear, in holiness and righteousness before Him, all the days of our life. Vs 79 To give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

30. Luke 6:38 Give, and it shall be given unto you; good measure, pressed down, and shaken together, and running over, shall men give into your bosom. For with the same measure that ye mete withal it shall be measured to you again.

31. John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, *but have everlasting life.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain the true riches:

Summary -- Seek the kingdom of God and His righteousness.

1. Proverbs 3:13,14 Happy is the man that findeth wisdom, and the man that getteth understanding. For the merchandise of it is better than the merchandise of silver, and the gain thereof than fine gold.

2. Proverbs 8:10,11 *Receive* My instruction, and not silver; and knowledge rather than choice gold. For wisdom is better than rubies; and all the things that may be desired are not to be compared to it.

3. Isaiah 31:7, 33:6 For in that day every man shall cast away his idols of silver, and his idols of gold, which your own hands have made unto you for a sin. 33:6 And wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times, and strength of salvation: the *fear of the Lord is his treasure.*

4. Luke 12:15,20,21 And He said unto them, Take heed, and beware of covetousness: for a man's life consisteth not in the abundance of the things which he possesseth. Vs 20,21 But God said unto him, Thou fool, this night thy soul shall be required of thee: then whose shall those things be, which thou hast provided? So is he that layeth up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God.

5. Luke 12:31-34 But rather seek ye the kingdom of God; and all these things shall be added unto you. Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom. Sell that ye have, and give alms; provide yourselves bags which wax not old, a treasure in the heavens that faileth not, where no thief

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

approacheth, neither moth corrupteth. For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

6. I Peter 1:7 That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ:

7. Revelation 3:17,18 Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods, and have need of nothing; and knowest not that thou art wretched, and miserable, and poor, and blind, and naked: I counsel thee to buy of Me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eye salve, that thou mayest see.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain wisdom and knowledge:

Summary -- Ask God for it. Seek it in the Bible. Apply it to your life.

1. Exodus 31:6 And in cutting of stones, to set them, and in carving of timber, to work in all manner of workmanship. and I, behold, I have given with him Aholiab, the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan: and in the hearts of all that are wise hearted I **have put wisdom**, that they may make all that I have commanded thee;

2. Deuteronomy 4:6 *Keep therefore and do them; for this is your wisdom* and your understanding in the sight of the nations, which shall hear all these statutes, and say, Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people.

3. Deuteronomy 8:3 And He humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that He might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.

4. Deuteronomy 10:12 And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,

5. Deuteronomy 29:9 Keep therefore the words of this covenant, and do them, that ye may prosper in all that ye do.

6. Psalm 111:10 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: a good understanding have all they that do His commandments:

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

his praise endureth for ever.

7. Proverbs 1:1-7 The proverbs of Solomon the son of David, king of Israel; to know wisdom and instruction; to perceive the words of understanding; to receive the instruction of wisdom, justice, and judgment, and equity; to give subtlety to the simple, to the young man knowledge and discretion. A wise man will hear, and will increase learning; and a man of understanding shall attain unto wise counsels: to understand a proverb, and the interpretation; the words of the wise, and their dark sayings. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge: but fools despise wisdom and instruction.

8. Proverbs 1:20-23 Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the streets: she crieth in the chief place of concourse, in the openings of the gates: in the city she uttereth her words, saying, how long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? And the scornors delight in their scorning, and fools hate knowledge? Turn you at my reproof: behold, I will pour out my spirit unto you, I will make known my words unto you.

9. Proverbs 2:1-5 My son, if thou wilt receive my words, and hide my commandments with thee; so that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding; yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice for understanding; if thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures; then shalt thou understand the fear of the LORD, and find the knowledge of God.

10. Proverbs 4:11 I have taught thee in the way of wisdom; I have led thee in right paths.

11. Proverbs 8:8-12 O ye simple, understand wisdom: and, ye fools, be ye of an understanding heart. Hear; for I will speak of excellent things; and the opening of my lips shall be right things. For my mouth shall speak truth; and wickedness is an abomination to my lips. All the words of my mouth are in

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

righteousness; there is nothing froward or perverse in them. They are all plain to him that understandeth, and right to them that find knowledge. Receive my instruction, and not silver; and knowledge rather than choice gold. For wisdom is better than rubies; and all the things that may be desired are not to be compared to it. I wisdom dwell with prudence, and find out knowledge of witty inventions.

12. Proverbs 12:1,16 Whoso loveth instruction loveth knowledge: but he that hateth reproof is brutish. Vs16 A fool's wrath is presently known: but a prudent man covereth shame.

13. Proverbs 13:20 He that walketh with wise men shall be wise: but a companion of fools shall be destroyed.

14. Proverbs 19:20 Hear counsel, and receive instruction, that thou mayest be wise in thy latter end.

15. Luke 1:17 And he shall go before him in the spirit and power of Elias, to turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient to the wisdom of the just; to make ready a people prepared for the Lord. (A.V. says the wisdom of the just is the knowledge and holy love of the will of God.)

16. Jeremiah 3:15 And I will give you pastors according to Mine heart, which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding.

17. Mark 4:24 And He said unto them, Take heed what ye hear: with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you: and unto you that hear shall more be given. For he that hath, to him shall be given: and he that hath not, from him shall be taken even that which he hath.

18. Luke 7:35 But wisdom is justified of all her children. (A.V. says that their wisdom shows in their life, character and deeds.)

19. Colossians 2:2,3 That their hearts might be comforted, being

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ; in whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

20. James 1:5-8 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord. A double minded man is unstable in all his ways.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to get understanding:

Summary -- Proverbs 24:3 Through wisdom is an house builded; and by understanding it is established.

1. Deuteronomy 4:5,6 Behold, I have taught you statutes and judgments, even as the Lord my God commanded me, that ye should do so in the land whither ye go to possess it. Keep therefore and do them; for this is your wisdom and your understanding in the sight of the nations, which shall hear all these statutes, and say, Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people.

2. Psalms 119:10,99,100,130 With my whole heart have I sought Thee: O let me not wander from Thy commandments. I have more understanding than all my teachers: for Thy testimonies are my meditation. I understand more than the ancients, because I keep Thy precepts. The entrance of Thy words giveth light; it giveth understanding unto the simple.

3. Proverbs 2:1-11 My son, if thou wilt receive My words, and hide My commandments with thee; so that thou incline thine ear unto wisdom, and apply thine heart to understanding; yea, if thou criest after knowledge, and liftest up thy voice for understanding; if thou seekest her as silver, and searchest for her as for hid treasures; then shalt thou understand the fear of the Lord, and find the knowledge of God. For the Lord giveth wisdom: out of His mouth cometh knowledge and understanding. He layeth up sound wisdom for the righteous: He is a buckler to them that walk uprightly. He keepeth the paths of judgment, and preserveth the way of His saints. Then shalt thou understand righteousness, and judgment, and equity; yea, every good path. When wisdom entereth into thine heart, and knowledge is pleasant unto thy soul;

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

discretion shall preserve thee, understanding shall keep thee:

4. Proverbs 3:13-19 Happy is the man that findeth wisdom, and the man that getteth understanding. For the merchandise of it is better than the merchandise of silver, and the gain thereof than fine gold. She is more precious than rubies: and all the things thou canst desire are not to be compared unto her. Length of days is in her right hand; and in her left hand riches and honour. Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace. She is a tree of life to them that lay hold upon her: and happy is every one that retaineth her. The Lord by wisdom hath founded the earth; by understanding hath He established the heavens.

5. Proverbs 4:7 Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom: and with all thy getting get understanding.

6. Proverbs 5:1 My son, attend unto My wisdom, and *bow thine ear to My understanding:*

7. Proverbs 9:10 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: and the knowledge of the holy is understanding.

8. Proverbs 10:13 In the lips of him that hath understanding wisdom is found: but a rod is for the back of him that is void of understanding.

9. Isaiah 5:13 Therefore My people are gone into captivity, because they have no knowledge: [The knowledge of God is gained by understanding that God knows best and has given us wisdom, understanding and knowledge through the Holy Bible.]

10. Isaiah 27:11 When the boughs thereof are withered, they shall be broken off: the women come, and set them on fire: *for it is a people of no understanding: therefore He that made them will not have mercy on them, and He that formed them will shew them no favour.* [It's that important.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

11. Jeremiah 3:14,15 Turn, O backsliding children, saith the Lord; for I am married unto you: and I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion: and I will give you pastors according to Mine heart, *which shall feed you with knowledge and understanding.*

12. Luke 24:45 Then opened He their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

13. Ephesians 1:18 Wherefore I also, after I heard of your faith in the Lord Jesus, and love unto all the saints, cease not to give thanks for you, making mention of you in my prayers; that the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give unto you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of Him: *the eyes of your understanding being enlightened*, that ye may know what is the hope of His calling, and what the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the saints,

14. II Timothy 2:7 Consider what I say; and the Lord give thee understanding in all things.

15. I John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know Him that is true, and we are in Him that is true, even in His Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have divine guidance:

Summary -- Ask, believe He will answer. Wait for the answer.

1. Proverbs 3:5,6 Trust in the Lord with all thine heart; and lean not unto thine own understanding. In all thy ways acknowledge Him, and *He shall direct thy paths.*

2. Luke 1:78,79 Through the tender mercy of our God; whereby the dayspring from on high hath visited us, *to give light to them that sit in darkness and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace.*

3. James 1:5-8 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him. But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For he that wavereth is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. For let not that man think that he shall receive any thing of the Lord. *A double minded man is unstable in all his ways.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have peace:

Summary -- Peace comes from casting your care upon the Lord and walking by faith.

1. Deuteronomy 10:12 And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,
2. Psalms 37:5 Commit thy way unto the Lord; trust also in Him; and He shall bring it to pass.
3. Psalms 37:7 Rest in the Lord, and wait patiently for Him: fret not thyself because of him who prospereth in his way, because of the man who bringeth wicked devices to pass. Cease from anger, and forsake wrath: fret not thyself in any wise to do evil. For evildoers shall be cut off: but those that wait upon the Lord, they shall inherit the earth.
4. Psalms 91:1,2 He that dwelleth in the secret place of the most High shall abide under the shadow of the Almighty. I will say of the Lord, He is my refuge and my fortress: my God; in him will I trust.
5. Proverbs 1:22-33 Wisdom crieth without; she uttereth her voice in the streets: she crieth in the chief place of concourse, in the openings of the gates: in the city she uttereth her words, saying, how long, ye simple ones, will ye love simplicity? And the scorners delight in their scorning, and fools hate knowledge? Turn you at My reproof: behold, I will pour out My spirit unto you, I will make known My words unto you. Because I have called, and ye refused; I have stretched out My hand, and no man regarded; but

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

ye have set at nought all My counsel, and would none of My reproof: I also will laugh at your calamity; I will mock when your fear cometh; when your fear cometh as desolation, and your destruction cometh as a whirlwind; when distress and anguish cometh upon you. Then shall they call upon Me, but I will not answer; they shall seek Me early, but they shall not find Me: for that they hated knowledge, and did not choose the fear of the Lord: they would none of My counsel: they despised all my reproof. Therefore shall they eat of the fruit of their own way, and be filled with their own devices. For the turning away of the simple shall slay them, and the prosperity of fools shall destroy them. *But whoso hearkeneth unto Me shall dwell safely, and shall be quiet from fear of evil.*

6. Proverbs 3:13-18 Happy is the man that findeth wisdom, and the man that getteth understanding. For the merchandise of it is better than the merchandise of silver, and the gain thereof than fine gold. She is more precious than rubies: and all the things thou canst desire are not to be compared unto her. Length of days is in her right hand; and in her left hand riches and honour. Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and *all her paths are peace.* She is a tree of life to them that lay hold upon her: and happy is every one that retaineth her.

7. Isaiah 26:3 **Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on Thee: because he trusteth in Thee.**

8. Isaiah 32:15-18 *Until the spirit be poured upon us from on high, and the wilderness be a fruitful field, and the fruitful field be counted for a forest. Then judgment shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness remain in the fruitful field. And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance for ever. And My people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places; when it shall hail, coming down on the forest; and the city shall be low in a low place.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

9. Isaiah 54:9-14 In a little wrath I hid My face from thee for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the Lord thy Redeemer. For this is as the waters of Noah unto Me: for as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be wroth with thee, nor rebuke thee. For the mountains shall depart, and the hills be removed; but My kindness shall not depart from thee, *neither shall the covenant of My peace be removed*, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee. O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted, behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colours, and lay thy foundations with sapphires. And I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones. And all thy children shall be taught of the Lord; and great shall be the peace of thy children. In righteousness shalt thou be established: *thou shalt be far from oppression; for thou shalt not fear: and from terror; for it shall not come near thee.*

10. Matthew 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you. *Take therefore no thought for the morrow: for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself. Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.*

11. Luke 2:11-14 For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord. And this shall be a sign unto you; Ye shall find the babe wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in a manger. And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God,

12. Luke 19 Saying, If thou hadst known, even thou, at least in this thy day, the things which belong unto thy peace! but now they are hid from thine eyes. . . . *because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation.*

13. John 14:27 : *Peace I leave with you, My peace I give unto you: not as the world giveth, give I unto you. Let not your heart be troubled, neither let it be afraid.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

14. Romans 8:4-6 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. *For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace.*

15. Romans 14:17 For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.

16. Philippians 4:4-8 Rejoice in the Lord alway: and again I say, Rejoice. Let your moderation be known unto all men. The Lord is at hand. *Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.* Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, *think on these things.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have and exercise faith:

Summary -- Meditate in God’s word day and night.

1. Genesis 25:20,21,26 And *Isaac was forty years old* when he took Rebekah to wife, the daughter of Bethuel the Syrian of Padan-aram, the sister to Laban the Syrian. And Isaac entreated the Lord for his wife, because she was barren: and the Lord was entreated of him, and Rebekah his wife conceived. Vs 26 And after that came his brother out, and his hand took hold on Esau's heel; and his name was called Jacob: and *Isaac was threescore years old when she bare them*. [Twenty years passed from the time Isaac asked God for children and the time when the twins were born. Faith never quits.]

2. Exodus 4:31 And the people believed: and when they heard that the Lord had visited the children of Israel, and that he had looked upon their affliction, *then they bowed their heads and worshipped*.

3. Exodus 5-6:1 : And afterward Moses and Aaron went in, and told Pharaoh, Thus saith the Lord God of Israel, Let My people go, that they may hold a feast unto Me in the wilderness. And Pharaoh said, Who is the Lord, that I should obey His voice to let Israel go? I know not the Lord, neither will I let Israel go. And they said, The God of the Hebrews hath met with us: let us go, we pray thee, three days' journey into the desert, and sacrifice unto the Lord our God; lest He fall upon us with pestilence, or with the sword. And the king of Egypt said unto them, Wherefore do ye, Moses and Aaron, let the people from their works? get you unto your burdens. And Pharaoh said, Behold, the people of the land now are many, and ye make them rest from their burdens. And Pharaoh commanded the same day the taskmasters of the

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

people, and their officers, saying, ye shall no more give the people straw to make brick, as heretofore: let them go and gather straw for themselves. And the tale of the bricks, which they did make heretofore, ye shall lay upon them; ye shall not diminish ought thereof: for they be idle; therefore they cry, saying, Let us go and sacrifice to our God. Let there more work be laid upon the men, that they may labour therein; and let them not regard vain words. And the taskmasters of the people went out, and their officers, and they spake to the people, saying, Thus saith Pharaoh, I will not give you straw. Go ye, get you straw where ye can find it: yet not ought of your work shall be diminished. So the people were scattered abroad throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble instead of straw. And the taskmasters hastened them, saying, Fulfill your works, your daily tasks, as when there was straw. And the officers of the children of Israel, which Pharaoh's taskmasters had set over them, were beaten, and demanded, Wherefore have ye not fulfilled your task in making brick both yesterday and to day, as heretofore? Then the officers of the children of Israel came and cried unto Pharaoh, saying, Wherefore dealest thou thus with thy servants? There is no straw given unto thy servants, and they say to us, Make brick: and, behold, thy servants are beaten; but the fault is in thine own people. But he said, Ye are idle, ye are idle: therefore ye say, Let us go and do sacrifice to the Lord. Go therefore now, and work; for there shall no straw be given you, yet shall ye deliver the tale of bricks. And the officers of the children of Israel did see that they were in evil case, after it was said, Ye shall not diminish ought from your bricks of your daily task. And they met Moses and Aaron, who stood in the way, as they came forth from Pharaoh: and they said unto them, The Lord look upon you, and judge; because ye have made our savour to be abhorred in the eyes of Pharaoh, and in the eyes of his servants, to put a sword in their hand to slay us. And Moses returned unto the Lord, and said, Lord, wherefore hast Thou so evil entreated this people? why is it that thou hast sent me? For since I came to Pharaoh to speak in thy name, he hath done evil to this people; neither hast thou delivered thy people at all. Then the Lord said unto Moses, *Now shalt thou see what I will do to Pharaoh:* for with a strong

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

hand shall he let them go, and with a strong hand shall he drive them out of his land. [Faith must stand fast when it looks like it can't happen.]

4. Deuteronomy 1:29-43 Then I said unto you, Dread not, neither be afraid of them. The Lord your God which goeth before you, He shall fight for you, according to all that He did for you in Egypt before your eyes; and in the wilderness, where thou hast seen how that the Lord thy God bare thee, as a man doth bear his son, in all the way that ye went, until ye came into this place. Yet in this thing ye did not believe the Lord your God, Who went in the way before you, to search you out a place to pitch your tents in, in fire by night, to shew you by what way ye should go, and in a cloud by day. 34: And the Lord heard the voice of your words, and was wroth, and sware, saying, Surely there shall not one of these men of this evil generation see that good land, which I sware to give unto your fathers, save Caleb the son of Jephunneh; he shall see it, and to him will I give the land that he hath trodden upon, and to his children, *because he hath wholly followed the Lord*. Also the Lord was angry with me for your sakes, saying, Thou also shalt not go in thither. But Joshua the son of Nun, which standeth before thee, he shall go in thither: encourage him: for he shall cause Israel to inherit it. Moreover your little ones, which ye said should be a prey, and your children, which in that day had no knowledge between good and evil, they shall go in thither, and unto them will I give it, and they shall possess it. But as for you, turn you, and take your journey into the wilderness by the way of the Red sea. Then ye answered and said unto me, We have sinned against the Lord, we will go up and fight, according to all that the Lord our God commanded us. And when ye had girded on every man his weapons of war, ye were ready to go up into the hill. And the Lord said unto me, Say unto them, Go not up, neither fight; *for I am not among you*, lest ye be smitten before your enemies. So I spake unto you; and ye would not hear, but rebelled against the commandment of the Lord, and *went presumptuously up* into the hill. [Notice what they spoke either strengthened them or weakened them. What we speak also

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

reveals whether we are in faith or unbelief.]

5. Deuteronomy 20:1-4 When thou goest out to battle against thine enemies, *and seest horses, and chariots, and a people more than thou, be not afraid of them: for the Lord thy God is with thee, which brought thee up out of the land of Egypt.* And it shall be, when ye are come nigh unto the battle, that the priest shall approach and speak unto the people, and shall say unto them, Hear, O Israel, ye approach this day unto battle against your enemies: let not your hearts faint, fear not, and *do not tremble, neither be ye terrified because of them, for the Lord your God is He that goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you.* [Remember to keep your eyes on the Lord and not on your trouble. Faith is based on our relationship with God and when He has said. Not on our circumstances.]

6. Deuteronomy 31:6 **Be strong and of a good courage, fear not, nor be afraid of them: for the Lord thy God, He it is that doth go with thee; He will not fail thee, nor forsake thee.**

7. I Samuel 17:37,45 **David said** moreover, The Lord that delivered me out of the paw of the lion, and out of the paw of the bear, He will deliver me out of the hand of this Philistine. And Saul said unto David, Go, and the Lord be with thee. Vs 45 Then said David to the Philistine, Thou comest to me with a sword, and with a spear, and with a shield: but *I come to thee in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom thou hast defied.* [David had faith in God. That’s how he became great.]

8. II Chronicles 32:7,8 **Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that is with him: for there be more with us than with him: with him is an arm of flesh; but with us is the Lord our God to help us, and to fight our battles.** And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah.

9. Psalms 20:7,8 *Some trust in chariots, and some in horses:*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

**but we will remember the name of the Lord our God. *They are brought down and fallen: but we are risen, and stand upright.***

10. Psalms 27:13,14 I had fainted, unless I had believed to see the goodness of the Lord in the land of the living. *Wait on the Lord: be of good courage, and He shall strengthen thine heart: wait, I say, on the Lord.*

11. Psalms 69:30,31 I will praise the name of God with a song, and will magnify Him with thanksgiving. This also shall please the Lord better than an ox or bullock that hath horns and hoofs. [Praise is a huge strengthener of faith.]

12. Psalms 89:34 My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of My lips. [Know it!]

13. Isaiah 26:3,4 Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: **because he trusteth in thee.** Trust ye in the Lord for ever: *for in the Lord Jehovah is everlasting strength:*

14. Isaiah 40:17,22,26 All nations before Him are as nothing; and they are counted to Him less than nothing, and vanity. Vs22 It is He that sitteth upon the circle of the earth, and the inhabitants thereof are as grasshoppers; that stretcheth out the heavens as a curtain, and spreadeth them out as a tent to dwell in: Vs26 *Lift up your eyes on high, and behold who hath created these things,* that bringeth out their host by number: He calleth them all by names by the greatness of His might, for that He is strong in power; not one faileth. [**Know and meditate on the greatness of God.**]

15. Isaiah 43:2 When thou passest through the waters, I will be with thee; and through the rivers, they shall not overflow thee: when thou walkest through the fire, thou shalt not be burned; neither shall the flame kindle upon thee. [**Meditate on His promises.**]

16. Isaiah 44:25 That frustrateth the tokens of the liars, and

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

maketh diviners mad; that turneth wise men backward, and maketh their knowledge foolish; [**Meditate on His power.**]

17. Isaiah 45:6,21,22 That they may know from the rising of the sun, and from the west, that there is none beside Me. I am the Lord, and there is none else. Vs21,22 Tell ye, and bring them near; yea, let them take counsel together: who hath declared this from ancient time? who hath told it from that time? have not I the Lord? and there is no God else beside Me; **a just God and a Saviour**; there is none beside Me. Look unto Me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else. [**Meditate on His Sovereignty.**]

18. Isaiah 48:17-19 Thus saith the Lord, thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; I am the Lord thy God *which teacheth thee to profit, which leadeth thee by the way that thou shouldest go.* **O that thou hadst hearkened to My commandments!** *then had thy peace been as a river, and thy righteousness as the waves of the sea:* thy seed also had been as the sand, and the offspring of thy bowels like the gravel thereof; his name should not have been cut off nor destroyed from before Me. [**Know that you are in right standing with God. Therein lies your confidence.**]

19. Isaiah 50:10 Who is among you that feareth the Lord, that obeyeth the voice of His servant, that walketh in darkness, and hath no light? *let him trust in the name of the Lord, and stay upon his God.*

20. Matthew 15:28 Then Jesus answered and said unto her, *O woman, great is thy faith: be it unto thee even as thou wilt.* And her daughter was made whole from that very hour.

21. Mark 5:35,36 While He yet spake, there came from the ruler of the synagogue's house certain which said, Thy daughter is dead: why troublest thou the Master any further? As soon as Jesus heard the word that was spoken, He saith unto the ruler of the synagogue, ***Be not afraid, only believe.*** [**Jesus taught that**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

there was no circumstance that God could not change and faith was the substance by which to receive from God. He also taught that faith is something we can decide to have rather than the opposite, fear.]

22. Mark 9:23 Jesus said unto him, **If thou canst believe, all things are possible to him that believeth.** [How can you believe? Meditate on God’s Word and apply it to your life. Joshua 1:7,8]

23. Mark 11:23,24 For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; *and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith.* **Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.**

24. Luke 1:37 For with God nothing shall be impossible. **[Know it!]**

25. Luke 1:45 *And blessed is she that believed: for there shall be a performance of those things which were told her from the Lord.*

26. Luke 7:9 When Jesus heard these things, He marvelled at him, and turned Him about, and said unto the people that followed him, I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel. **[The size of your faith does count. Just as in muscles, more is accomplished with more power.]**

27. Luke 8:25 And He said unto them, *Where is your faith?* And they being afraid wondered, saying one to another, What manner of man is this! for He commandeth even the winds and water, and they obey Him.

28. Luke 8:48 And He said unto her, Daughter, be of good comfort: *thy faith hath made thee whole; go in peace.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

29. Luke 11:9,10 And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you. **For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened.** [Know that this is a fact. To have faith and use it, you must ask, seek and knock.]

30. Luke 11:13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: *how much more shall your heavenly Father give* the Holy Spirit to them that ask him? **[You must know that God is your loving Father as well as knowing that He is God and He is Good.]**

31. Luke 22:32 *But I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not: and when thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren.* [Faith can fail. Yet we need faith to obtain. The answer, again, is to meditate in His word day and night.]

32. John 20:27 Then saith He to Thomas, Reach hither thy finger, and behold My hands; and reach hither thy hand, and thrust it into My side: *and be not faithless, but believing.* [Again, Jesus indicates that we have to be determined.]

33. Romans 4:20,21 **He (Abraham) staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; and *being fully persuaded* that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.**

34. Romans 10:14,17 How then shall they call on Him in whom they have not believed? and how shall they believe in Him of whom they have not heard? and how shall they hear without a preacher? Vs 17 *So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be and remain strong:

Summary -- Meditate in God’s word day and night and be a doer of it and not a hearer only.

1. Deuteronomy 10:12-20 And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, to keep the commandments of the Lord, and His statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good? Behold, the heaven and the heaven of heavens is the Lord's thy God, the earth also, with all that therein is. Only the Lord had a delight in thy fathers to love them, and He chose their seed after them, even you above all people, as it is this day. Circumcise therefore the foreskin of your heart, and be no more stiffnecked. For the Lord your God is God of gods, and Lord of lords, a great God, a mighty, and a terrible, which regardeth not persons, nor taketh reward: He doth execute the judgment of the fatherless and widow, and loveth the stranger, in giving him food and raiment. Love ye therefore the stranger: for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt. Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God; Him shalt thou serve, and to Him shalt thou cleave, and swear by His name.

2. Deuteronomy 11:7,8 But your eyes have seen all the great acts of the Lord which He did. Therefore shall ye keep all the commandments which I command you this day, that ye may be strong, and go in and possess the land, whither ye go to possess it;

3. Joshua 1:76-8 Be strong and of a good courage: for unto this people shalt thou divide for an inheritance the land, which I sware unto their fathers to give them. Only be thou strong and very courageous, *that thou mayest observe to do according to all the*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*law, which Moses my servant commanded thee: turn not from it to the right hand or to the left, that thou mayest prosper whithersoever thou goest. This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.*

4. Joshua 23:6-13 *Be ye therefore very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the law of Moses, that ye turn not aside therefrom to the right hand or to the left; that ye come not among these nations, these that remain among you; neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them: but cleave unto the Lord your God, as ye have done unto this day. **For the Lord hath driven out from before you great nations and strong:** but as for you, no man hath been able to stand before you unto this day. One man of you shall chase a thousand: for the Lord your God, He it is that fighteth for you, as He hath promised you. **Take good heed therefore unto yourselves, that ye love the Lord your God. Else if ye do in any wise go back, and cleave unto the remnant of these nations, even these that remain among you, and shall make marriages with them, and go in unto them, and they to you: know for a certainty that the Lord your God will no more drive out any of these nations from before you; but they shall be snares and traps unto you, and scourges in your sides, and thorns in your eyes, until ye perish from off this good land which the Lord your God hath given you.***

5. Psalms 68:35 O God, Thou art terrible out of Thy holy places: the God of Israel is He that giveth strength and power unto His people. Blessed be God.

6. Psalms 71:16 I will go in the strength of the Lord God: I will make mention of Thy righteousness, even of Thine only.

7. Isaiah 30:15 For thus saith the Lord God, the Holy One of

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

Israel; In returning and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength: and ye would not.

8. Isaiah 40: 31 **But they that wait upon the Lord shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings as eagles; they shall run, and not be weary; and they shall walk, and not faint.**

9. Ezekiel 13:3-5 Thus saith the Lord God; Woe unto the foolish prophets, that follow their own spirit, and have seen nothing! O Israel, thy prophets are like the foxes in the deserts. *Ye have not gone up into the gaps, neither made up the hedge for the house of Israel to stand in the battle in the day of the Lord.*

10. I Corinthians 9:25-27 And every man that striveth for the mastery *is temperate in all things*. Now they do it to obtain a corruptible crown; but we an incorruptible. I therefore so run, not as uncertainly; so fight I, not as one that beateth the air: but I keep under my body, and bring it into subjection: lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway.

11. II Corinthians 12:9 And He said unto me, *My grace is sufficient for thee*: for My strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, *that the power of Christ may rest upon me*.

12. Ephesians 3:16 That He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, *to be strengthened with might by His Spirit in the inner man*; that Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love, may be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; and to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, *that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God*.

13. Colossians 2:6-8 *As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in Him: rooted and built up in Him, and stablished in the faith*, as ye have been taught, abounding therein

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

with thanksgiving. Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men . . .

14. I Thessalonians 5:11,16-25 Wherefore comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also ye do. Vs 16-25 Rejoice evermore. Pray without ceasing. In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you. Quench not the Spirit. Despise not prophesyings. Prove all things; hold fast that which is good. Abstain from all appearance of evil. And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. Faithful is he that calleth you, who also will do it. Brethren, pray for us.

15. II Timothy 3:15-17 And that from a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus. All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: That the man of God may be perfect, *thoroughly furnished* unto all good works.

16. James 1: Wherefore lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness, and receive with meekness the *engrafted word, which is able to save your souls*. But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to do warfare:

Summary -- Put on the full armor of God and stand your ground.

1. Deuteronomy 3:22 Ye shall not fear them: *for the Lord your God He shall fight for you.*
2. Judges 3:1-4 Now these are the nations which the Lord left, to prove Israel by them, even as many of Israel as had not known all the wars of Canaan; *only that the generations of the children of Israel might know, to teach them war*, at the least such as before knew nothing thereof; namely, five lords of the Philistines, and all the Canaanites, and the Sidonians, and the Hivites that dwelt in mount Lebanon, from mount Baal-hermon unto the entering in of Hamath. And they were to prove Israel by them, to know whether they would hearken unto the commandments of the Lord, which He commanded their fathers by the hand of Moses.
3. I Samuel 23:2 Therefore *David enquired of the Lord*, saying, Shall I go and smite these Philistines? And the *Lord said unto David*, Go, and smite the Philistines, and save Keilah.
4. I Samuel 30:8 And David enquired at the Lord, saying, Shall I pursue after this troop? shall I overtake them? And *He answered him*, Pursue: for thou shalt surely overtake them, and without fail recover all.
5. II Samuel 2:1 And it came to pass after this, *that David enquired of the Lord*, saying, Shall I go up into any of the cities of Judah? And the *Lord said unto him*, Go up. And David said, Whither shall I go up? And He said, Unto Hebron.
6. II Chronicles 13:10-16 But as for us, the Lord is our God, and

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

we have not forsaken Him; and the priests, which minister unto the Lord, are the sons of Aaron, and the Levites wait upon their business: And they burn unto the Lord every morning and every evening burnt sacrifices and sweet incense: the shewbread also set they in order upon the pure table; and the candlestick of gold with the lamps thereof, to burn every evening: *for we keep the charge of the Lord our God*, but ye have forsaken Him. And, behold, God Himself is with us for our captain, and His priests with sounding trumpets to cry alarm against you. O children of Israel, fight ye not against the Lord God of your fathers; for ye shall not prosper. But Jeroboam caused an ambushment to come about behind them: so they were before Judah, and the ambushment was behind them. And when Judah looked back, behold, the battle was before and behind: and *they cried unto the Lord, and the priests sounded with the trumpets. Then the men of Judah gave a shout*: and as the men of Judah shouted, it came to pass, that *God smote* Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah. And the children of Israel fled before Judah: and God delivered them into their hand. [Apply spiritually.]

7. II Chronicles 15:7 *Be ye strong therefore, and let not your hands be weak: for your work shall be rewarded.*

8. II Chronicles 16:7-9 And at that time Hanani the seer came to Asa king of Judah, and said unto him, Because thou hast relied on the king of Syria, and not *relied on the Lord thy God*, therefore is the host of the king of Syria escaped out of thine hand. Were not the Ethiopians and the Lubims a huge host, with very many chariots and horsemen? Yet, *because thou didst rely on the Lord, He delivered them into thine hand. For the eyes of the Lord run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to shew Himself strong in the behalf of them whose heart is perfect toward him.* Herein thou hast done foolishly: therefore from henceforth thou shalt have wars.

9. II Chronicles 20:6-24 And said, O Lord God of our fathers, art not Thou God in heaven? And rulest not Thou over all the

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

kingdoms of the heathen? And in Thine hand is there not power and might, so that none is able to withstand Thee? Art not Thou our God, who didst drive out the inhabitants of this land before Thy people Israel, and gavest it to the seed of Abraham Thy friend for ever? And they dwelt therein, and have built Thee a sanctuary therein for Thy name, saying, *if, when evil cometh upon us, as the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine, we stand before this house, and in Thy presence, (for Thy name is in this house,) and cry unto Thee in our affliction, then Thou wilt hear and help.* And now, behold, the children of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir, whom thou wouldest not let Israel invade, when they came out of the land of Egypt, but they turned from them, and destroyed them not; behold, I say, how they reward us, to come to cast us out of thy possession, which thou hast given us to inherit. O our God, *wilt thou not judge them?* For we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do: but our eyes are upon thee. And all Judah stood before the Lord, with their little ones, their wives, and their children. Then upon Jahaziel the son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, a Levite of the sons of Asaph, came the Spirit of the Lord in the midst of the congregation; and he said, Hearken ye, all Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem, and thou king Jehoshaphat, Thus saith the Lord unto you, Be not afraid nor dismayed by reason of this great multitude; for the battle is not yours, but God's. To morrow go ye down against them: behold, they come up by the cliff of Ziz; and ye shall find them at the end of the brook, before the wilderness of Jeruel. Ye shall not need to fight in this battle: set yourselves, stand ye still, and see the salvation of the Lord with you, O Judah and Jerusalem: fear not, nor be dismayed; to morrow go out against them: *for the Lord will be with you.* And Jehoshaphat bowed his head with his face to the ground: and all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell before the Lord, *worshipping the Lord.* And the Levites, of the children of the Kohathites, and of the children of the Korhites, stood up *to praise the Lord God of Israel with a loud voice on high.* And they rose early in the morning, and went forth into the wilderness of Tekoa: and as they went forth, Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

me, O Judah, and ye inhabitants of Jerusalem; *Believe in the Lord your God, so shall ye be established; believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper.* And when he had consulted with the people, he appointed singers unto the Lord, and that should praise the beauty of holiness, as they went out before the army, and to say, Praise the Lord; for his mercy endureth for ever. And when they began to *sing and to praise, the Lord* set ambushments against the children of Ammon, Moab, and mount Seir, which were come against Judah; and they were smitten. For the children of Ammon and Moab stood up against the inhabitants of mount Seir, utterly to slay and destroy them: and when they had made an end of the inhabitants of Seir, *every one* helped to destroy another. And when Judah came toward the watch tower in the wilderness, they looked unto the multitude, and, behold, they were dead bodies fallen to the earth, and none escaped.

10. II Chronicles 32:2-21 And when Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib was come, and that he was purposed to fight against Jerusalem, *he took counsel with his princes and his mighty men to stop the waters of the fountains which were without the city: and they did help him. So there was gathered much people together, who stopped all the fountains, and the brook that ran through the midst of the land, saying, Why should the kings of Assyria come, and find much water? Also he strengthened himself, and built up all the wall that was broken, and raised it up to the towers, and another wall without, and repaired Millo in the city of David, and made darts and shields in abundance. And he set captains of war over the people, and gathered them together to him in the street of the gate of the city, and spake comfortably to them, saying, Be strong and courageous, be not afraid nor dismayed for the king of Assyria, nor for all the multitude that is with him: for there be more with us than with him: with him is an arm of flesh; but with us is the Lord our God to help us, and to fight our battles.* And the people rested themselves upon the words of Hezekiah king of Judah. After this did Sennacherib king of Assyria send his servants to Jerusalem, (but he himself laid siege against Lachish, and all his power with him,) unto Hezekiah king of Judah, and unto all Judah

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

that were at Jerusalem, saying, thus saith Sennacherib king of Assyria, Whereon do ye trust, that ye abide in the siege in Jerusalem? Doth not Hezekiah persuade you to give over yourselves to die by famine and by thirst, saying, The Lord our God shall deliver us out of the hand of the king of Assyria? Hath not the same Hezekiah taken away his high places and his altars, and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, saying, Ye shall worship before one altar, and burn incense upon it? Know ye not what I and my fathers have done unto all the people of other lands? Were the gods of the nations of those lands any ways able to deliver their lands out of mine hand? Who was there among all the gods of those nations that my fathers utterly destroyed, that could deliver his people out of mine hand, that your God should be able to deliver you out of mine hand? Now therefore let not Hezekiah deceive you, nor persuade you on this manner, neither yet believe him: for no god of any nation or kingdom was able to deliver his people out of mine hand, and out of the hand of my fathers: how much less shall your God deliver you out of mine hand? And his servants spake yet more against the Lord God, and against his servant Hezekiah. He wrote also letters to rail on the Lord God of Israel, and to speak against Him, saying, As the gods of the nations of other lands have not delivered their people out of mine hand, so shall not the God of Hezekiah deliver his people out of mine hand. Then they cried with a loud voice in the Jews' speech unto the people of Jerusalem that were on the wall, to affright them, and to trouble them; that they might take the city. And they spake against the God of Jerusalem, as against the gods of the people of the earth, which were the work of the hands of man. And for this cause Hezekiah the king, and the prophet Isaiah the son of Amoz, *prayed and cried to heaven. And the Lord sent an angel, which cut off all the mighty men of valour, and the leaders and captains in the camp of the king of Assyria.* So he returned with shame of face to his own land. And when he was come into the house of his god, they that came forth of his own bowels slew him there with the sword. Guided them on every side. [Apply spiritually.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

11. Nehemiah 4:8-23 And conspired all of them together to come and to fight against Jerusalem, and to hinder it. *Nevertheless we made our prayer unto our God, and set a watch against them day and night,* because of them. And Judah said, The strength of the bearers of burdens is decayed, and there is much rubbish; so that we are not able to build the wall. And our adversaries said, They shall not know, neither see, till we come in the midst among them, and slay them, and cause the work to cease. And it came to pass, that when the Jews which dwelt by them came, *they said unto us ten times,* From all places whence ye shall return unto us they will be upon you. Therefore set I in the lower places behind the wall, and on the higher places, I even set the people after their families with their swords, their spears, and their bows. And I looked, and rose up, and *said unto the nobles, and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, Be not ye afraid of them: remember the Lord, which is great and terrible, and fight for your brethren, your sons, and your daughters, your wives, and your houses.* And it came to pass, *when our enemies heard that it was known unto us, and God had brought their counsel to nought, that we returned all of us to the wall, every one unto his work. And it came to pass from that time forth, that the half of my servants wrought in the work, and the other half of them held both the spears, the shields, and the bows, and the habergeons; and the rulers were behind all the house of Judah. They which builded on the wall, and they that bare burdens, with those that laded, every one with one of his hands wrought in the work, and with the other hand held a weapon. For the builders, every one had his sword girded by his side, and so builded. And he that sounded the trumpet was by me. And I said unto the nobles, and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, The work is great and large, and we are separated upon the wall, one far from another. In what place therefore ye hear the sound of the trumpet, resort ye thither unto us: our God shall fight for us.* So we laboured in the work: and half of them held the spears from the rising of the morning till the stars appeared. Likewise at the same time said I unto the people, Let every one with his servant lodge within Jerusalem, that in the night they may be a guard to us, and labour on the day. *So neither I, nor*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*my brethren, nor my servants, nor the men of the guard which followed me, none of us put off our clothes, saving that every one put them off for washing.* [Apply spiritually. This teaches diligence, persistence, faith, wisdom and courage.]

12. Psalms 27:11 Teach me Thy way, O Lord, and lead me in a plain path, *because of mine enemies.*

13. Psalms 149:5-9 Let the saints be joyful in glory: let them sing aloud upon their beds. *Let the high praises of God be in their mouth, and a twoedged sword in their hand; to execute vengeance upon the heathen, and punishments upon the people; to bind their kings with chains, and their nobles with fetters of iron; to execute upon them the judgment written: this honour have all his saints.* Praise ye the Lord.

14. Matthew 4:3-11 : And when the tempter came to Him, he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread. But He answered and said, *It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God.* Then the devil taketh Him up into the holy city, and setteth Him on a pinnacle of the temple, and saith unto Him, If thou be the Son of God, cast thyself down: for it is written, He shall give his angels charge concerning thee: and in their hands they shall bear thee up, lest at any time thou dash thy foot against a stone. Jesus said unto him, *It is written* again, Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God. Again, the devil taketh him up into an exceeding high mountain, and sheweth Him all the kingdoms of the world, and the glory of them; and saith unto Him, All these things will I give thee, if thou wilt fall down and worship me. Then saith Jesus unto him, *Get thee hence, Satan: for it is written,* Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and him only shalt thou serve. Then the devil leaveth him, and, behold, angels came and ministered unto him.

15. Luke 11:21,22 When a strong man armed keepeth his palace, his goods are in peace: but when a stronger than he shall

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

come upon him, and overcome him, he taketh from him all his armour wherein he trusted, and divideth his spoils.

16. Ephesians 6:10-18 Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of His might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. *Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.* Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; and your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God: praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

17. II Timothy 2:1-4 Thou therefore, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. And the things that thou hast heard of me among many witnesses, the same commit thou to faithful men, who shall be able to teach others also. *Thou therefore endure hardness, as a good soldier of Jesus Christ. No man that warreth entangleth himself with the affairs of this life; that he may please him who hath chosen him to be a soldier.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to triumph over your enemies or . . . How to possess the land:

Summary -- Love not the world neither the thing of the world. Wholly lean on and follow the Lord.

1. Exodus 34:12-14 Take heed to thyself lest thou make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land whither thou goest, lest it be for a snare in the midst of thee: but ye shall destroy their altars, break their groves: for thou shalt worship no other god: for the Lord, whose name is jealous, is a jealous God. [Apply this to the spiritual promise land - get rid of everything God said to get rid of. Everything!]

2. Deuteronomy 1:8 Behold [look] I have set the land before you; go *in and possess the land* which the Lord sware unto your fathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, to give unto them and to their seed after them. [Jesus took the spiritual promise land for us. We must follow these instructions in order to possess it.] Vs 29,30 Then I said unto you, *dread not, neither be afraid of them. The Lord your God which goeth before you, He shall fight for you,* according to all that He did for you in Egypt before your eyes. Vs 36 Save Caleb the son of Jephunneh; he shall see it, and to him will I give the land that he hath trodden *because he hath wholly followed the Lord.*

3. Deuteronomy 4:1-9 Now therefore hearken, O Israel, unto the statutes and unto the judgments, which I teach you, *for to do them, that ye may live, and go in and possess* the land which the Lord God of your fathers giveth you. *Ye shall not add unto the word which I command you, neither shall ye diminish ought from it,* that ye may keep the commandments of the Lord your God which I command you. Your eyes have seen what the Lord did because

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

of the Baalpeor: [a god of compromise] for all the men that followed Baalpeor, the Lord thy God hath destroyed them from among you. But ye that did *cleave unto the Lord* your God are alive every one of you this day. Behold, I have taught you statutes and judgments, even as the Lord my God commanded, that ye should do so in the land whither ye go to possess it. *Keep therefore and do them; for this is your wisdom and your understanding* in the sight of the nations, which shall hear all these statutes, and say, surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people. For what nation is there so great, who hath God so nigh unto them, as the Lord our God is in all things that we call upon Him for? And what nation is there so great, that hath statutes and judgments so righteous as all this law, which I set before you this day? *Only take heed to thyself, and keep thy soul diligently*, lest thou forget the things which thine eyes have seen, and lest they depart from thy heart all the days of thy life: but teach them thy sons, and thy sons, sons; [not necessarily]

4. Deuteronomy 4:25-31 When thou shalt beget children, and children’s children, and ye shall have remained long in the land, and shall corrupt yourselves, and make a graven image, or the likeness of any thing, and shall do evil in the sight of the Lord thy God, to provoke Him to anger: I call heaven and earth to witness against you this day, that ye shall soon utterly perish from off the land whereunto ye go over Jordan to possess it; ye shall not prolong your days upon it, but shall utterly be destroyed. And the Lord shall scatter you among the nations, and ye shall be left few in number among the heathen, whither the Lord shall lead you. And there ye shall serve gods, the work of men’s hands, wood and stone, which neither see, nor hear, nor eat, nor smell. But if from thence thou shalt seek the Lord thy God, thou shalt find Him, if thou seek Him with all thy heart and with all thy soul. When thou art in tribulation, and all these things are come upon thee, even in the latter days, if thou turn to the Lord thy God, and shalt be obedient unto His voice; for the Lord thy God is a merciful God; He will not forsake thee, neither destroy thee, nor forget the covenant of thy fathers which He sware unto them. [It’s always the same

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

plan with God. If we deliberately turn from Him and sin, we lose. If we repent and turn to Him, He delivers us. The blood does not change this. The blood of Jesus is meant to deliver us from sin consciousness and make us God conscious. Hebrews 9:14 read it in the Amplified Version.]

5. Joshua 1:8 8: This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth; but thou shalt meditate therein day and night, that thou mayest observe to do according to all that is written therein: for then thou shalt make thy way prosperous, and then thou shalt have good success.

6. Joshua 23:6-16 *Be ye therefore very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the law of Moses [in our case- all that God teaches us to do] that ye turn not aside therefrom to the right hand or to the left; that ye come not among these nations, these that remain among you; neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them: [for us- not to do as the world does] but cleave unto the Lord your God, as ye have done unto this day. For the Lord hath driven out from before you great nations and strong: [for us- God has given us the crucifixion and resurrection to drive out carnal ways. Romans 6-8] but as for you, no man hath been able to stand before you unto this day. One man of you shall chase a thousand: for the Lord your God, He it is that fighteth for you, as He hath promised you. Take good heed therefore unto yourselves, that ye love the Lord your God. Else if ye do in any wise go back, and cleave unto the remnant of these nations, even these that remain among you, and shall make marriages with them, [find a way to compromise the word and co-habit with the world- James 4:4, I John 2:15-17] and go in unto them, and they to you: know for a certainty that the Lord your God will no more drive out any of these nations from before you; but they shall be snares and traps unto you, and scourges in your sides, and thorns in your eyes, until ye perish from off this good land which the Lord your God hath given you. [ That is exactly what happened to the power the church once had.] And, behold, this day I am going the way of*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

all the earth: and ye know in all your hearts and in all your souls, that not one thing hath failed of all the good things which the Lord your God spake concerning you; all are come to pass unto you, and not one thing hath failed thereof. Therefore it shall come to pass, that as all good things are come upon you, which the Lord your God promised you; so shall the Lord bring upon you all evil things, until He have destroyed you from off this good land which the Lord your God hath given you. When ye have transgressed the covenant of the Lord your God, which He commanded you, and have gone and served other gods, and bowed yourselves to them; then shall the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and ye shall perish quickly from off the good land which He hath given unto you.

7. I Samuel 7:3 And Samuel spake unto all the house of Israel, saying, if ye do *return unto the Lord with all your hearts*, then put away the strange gods [anything that causes us to disobey God] and ashtaroth from among you, and prepare your hearts unto the Lord, and serve Him only: and He will deliver you out of the hand of the Philistines. [In our case- from the power of the carnal nature.]

8. I Kings 14:7,8 Go, tell Jeroboam, thus saith the Lord God of Israel, forasmuch as I exalted thee from among the people, and made thee prince over My people Israel, and rent the kingdom away from the house of David, and gave it thee: and yet thou hast not been as My servant David, *who kept My commandments, and who followed Me with hall his heart, to do that only which was right in mine eyes; [Do it!]*

9. I Chronicles 22:19 Now *set your heart and your soul to seek the Lord your God*, arise therefore, and build ye the sanctuary of the Lord God, to bring the ark of the covenant of the Lord, and the holy vessels of God, into the house that is to be built to the name of the Lord. [For us, he’s talking about building the church as God has described it.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

10. Psalms 44:3 For they got not the land in possession by their own sword, neither did their own arm save them: but Thy right hand [Jesus] , and Thine arm, and the light of Thy countenance, *because Thou hadst a favour unto them.* [Grace means unmerited love and favor.]

11. Psalms 60:11,12 Give us help from trouble: for vain is the help of man. Through God we shall do valiantly: for He it is that shall tread down our enemies. {It’s not by might, nor by power, but *by My Spirit,* sayeth the Lord. Zechariah 4:6 Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lusts [high pressures] of the flesh. Galatians 5:16]

12. Psalms 81:13,14 Oh that My people had hearkened unto Me, and Israel had walked in My ways! I should soon have subdued their enemies, and turned My hand against their adversaries.

13. Proverbs 3:21-26 My son, let not them (godly wisdom and knowledge) depart from thine eyes: *keep sound wisdom and discretion:* so shall they be life unto thy soul, and grace to thy neck. Then shalt thou walk in thy way safely, and thy foot shall not stumble. When thou liest down, thou shalt not be afraid: yea, thou shalt lie down, and thy sleep shall be sweet. Be not afraid of sudden fear, neither of the desolation of the wicked, when it cometh. For the Lord shall be thy confidence, and shall keep thy foot from being taken.

14. Isaiah 35:3-10 Strengthen ye the weak hands, and confirm the feeble knees. Say to them that are of a fearful heart, *be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come with vengeance even God with a recompense; He will come and save you.* Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped. Then shall the lame man leap as an hart, and the tongue of the dumb sing: for in the wilderness shall waters break out, and streams in the desert. And the parched ground shall become a pool, and the thirsty land springs of water: in the

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

habitation of dragons, where each lay, shall be grass with reeds and rushes. *And an highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called the way of holiness; the unclean shall not pass over it;* but it shall be for those: the wayfaring men, though fools, shall not err therein. No lion shall be there, nor any ravenous beast shall go up thereon, it shall not be found there; but the redeemed shall walk there: and the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads: they shall obtain joy and gladness, and An sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

15. Isaiah 57:13 When thou criest, let thy companies deliver thee; but the wind shall carry them all away; vanity shall take them: *but he that putteth his trust in Me shall possess the land, and shall inherit My holy mountain;*

16. Isaiah 60:21 *Thy people also shall be all righteous:* they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of My planting, the work of My hands, that I may be glorified.

17. Jeremiah 7:3-7 Thus saith the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel, amend your ways and your doings, and I will cause you to dwell in this place. Trust ye not in lying words, saying, the temple of the Lord, [ or we are safe because of the blood] the temple of the Lord, the temple of the Lord, are these. *For if ye thoroughly amend your ways and your doings; if ye thoroughly execute judgment between a man and his neighbour; if ye oppress not the stanger, the fatherless, and the widow, and shed not innocent blood in this place, neither walk after other gods to your hurt: then will I cause you to dwell in this place,* in the land that I gave to your fathers, for ever and ever. [He is saying that if His church will follow all of His instructions, she will possess the promise land, forever- land where all the promises come to pass quickly-]

18. Jeremiah 25:5,6 They said, *turn ye again now every one from his evil way, and from the evil of your doings, and dwell in the land that the Lord hath given unto you and to your fathers for ever*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

and ever: and go not after other gods to serve them, and to worship them, and provoke Me not to anger with the works of your hands; and I will do you no hurt.

19. II Corinthians 4:1,2 . . . we faint not; But have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man’s conscience in the sight of God.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have power over all the enemy:

Summary -- There is one body, and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling; one Lord, one faith, one baptism, one God and Father of al, who is above all, and through all, and in you all. Ephesians 4:4-6

1. Genesis 11:6,7 And the Lord said, behold, *the people is **one**, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined to do.* Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another’s speech. [This power of unity restored in Christ- Luke 10:19,20, John 17: 20,21, Romans 5:17, 15:4-6]

2. Genesis 22:16,17 And said, by Myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for **because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son: (your most prized possession)** that in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed (Christ) shall possess the gate of His enemies;

3. Mark 16:17,18 And these signs shall follow them **that believe; in My name shall they** cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

4. Luke 10:19,20 Behold, I give unto you power to tread on serpents and scorpions, and *over all the power of the enemy:* and nothing shall by any means hurt you. Notwithstanding in this rejoice not, that the spirits are subject unto you; but rather rejoice,



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*because your names are written in heaven.*

5. John 17:20,21 Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on Me through their word; that they all may be **one**; as thou, Father, art in Me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us: . . .

6. Romans 5:17 For if by one man’s offence death reigned by one; much more *they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to overcome sin:

Summary -- **Not by might nor by power but by My Spirit**, sayeth the Lord. Zechariah 4:6

1. Genesis 4:7- If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? **And if thou doest not well, sin lieth (crouches) at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him.**

2. Deuteronomy 10:12- And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but (reverently) **to fear the Lord thy God: (that is,) to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy (mind and) heart and with thy soul, (entire being)**

3. Deuteronomy 10:16- Circumcise therefore the foreskin of your (mind and) heart, and be no more stiffnecked. (stubborn and hardened)

4. Deuteronomy 10:20- Thou shalt (reverently) fear the Lord thy God; Him shalt thou, and **to Him shalt thou cleave (cling) and swear by His name**

5. Proverbs 4:13-15 **Take fast hold of instruction; let her not go: keep (guard) her; for she is thy life. Enter not into the path of the wicked,** and go not in the way of evil men. Avoid it, pass not by it, turn from it, and pass away.

6. Proverbs 4:18 But the **path of the just is as the shining light,** that shineth more and more unto the perfect day.

7. Proverbs 4:20-27 My son, **attend to My words; incline thine ear** unto My sayings. **Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

**them in the midst of thine heart. For they are life unto those who find them, and health to all their flesh. Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life. Put away from thee a forward mouth, and perverse lips put far from thee. Let thine eyes look right on, and let thine eyelids look straight before thee. Ponder the path of thy feet, and let all they ways be established. Turn not to the right hand nor to the left: remove thy foot from evil.**

8. **[Recognize and get Wisdom]** Proverbs 4:11 Amplified Version says wisdom is the comprehensive insight into the ways and purposes of God. Luke 1:17 Amplified Version says the wisdom of the upright is the knowledge and holy love of the will of God.

9. Proverbs 8:1-8 Doth not wisdom cry? And understanding put forth her voice? (cries out to be heard) She standeth in the top of high places, by the way in the places of the paths. She crieth at the gates, at the entry of the city, at the coming in at the door. Unto you, O men, I call; and my voice is to the sons of men. O ye simple, understand wisdom: and, ye fools, be ye of an understanding heart. Hear; for I will speak of excellent things; and the opening of my lips shall be right things. For my mouth shall speak truth; and wickedness is an abomination to my lips. All the words of my mouth are in righteousness; there is nothing forward or perverse in them.

10. Proverbs 9:10 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom: and the knowledge of the holy is understanding.

11. **[Take sin very seriously.]** Matthew 5:29,30 And if thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out and cast it from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell. And if thy right hand offend thee, cut it off, and cast it from thee: for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell.

12. Acts 24:16 And herein do I exercise myself, (and **discipline**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

myself-mortifying my body -**deadening my carnal affections, bodily appetites and worldly desires, endeavoring in all respects**) to have always a conscience void of offence toward God, and toward me.

13. Romans 6:2-14 God forbid. How shall we, **that are dead to sin**, live any longer therein? Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? Therefore we are buried with Him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. For if we have been planted together in the likeness of His death, we shall be also in the likeness of His resurrection: **Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.** For he that is dead is freed from sin. Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with Him: knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more, death hath no more dominion over Him, For in that He died, He died unto sin once: but in that He liveth, He liveth unto God. **Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.** Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof. Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.

14. Romans 8:5 For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. (. . .**but those who are according to the Spirit and controlled by the desires of the Spirit**) **set their minds on and seek those things which gratify the (Holy) Spirit.**

15. II Corinthians 5:14,15 For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead: and that He died for all, that **they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto Him** which died for them, and rose

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

again.

16. II Corinthians 10:4-6 (For the weapons of our warfare are not carnal, but mighty through God to the **pulling down of strong holds;**) **casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;** and having in a readiness to revenge all disobedience, when your obedience is fulfilled.

17. Ephesians 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved) [**Know that under grace you can always get up and try, again. There’s no nine inning games for us, we play till we win.**]

18. Ephesians 6:10-18 Finally, my brethren, **be strong in the Lord, and in the power of His might.** Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore **take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.** Stand therefore, **having your loins girt about with the truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness; and your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace; above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God. Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;**

19. Colossians 2:6-12 As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so **walk ye in Him: rooted and built up in Him, and established in the faith,** as ye have been taught, abounding therein *with thanksgiving.* Beware lest any man spoil you through philosophy and vain deceit, after the tradition of men, after the

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

**rudiments of the world, and not after Christ.** For in Him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily. **And ye are complete in Him,** which is the head of all principality and power: in whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in **putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: buried with Him in baptism,** wherein also ye are risen with Him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised Him from the dead.

20. Colossians 3:1-5 If ye then be risen with Christ, **seek those things which are above, where Christ sitteth on the right hand of God. Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.** For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God. **When Christ, who is our life,** shall appear, then shall ye also appear with Him in glory. **Mortify therefore your members which are upon the earth;** fornication, (sexual vice) uncleanness, (impurity) inordinate affection, (sensual appetites) evil concupiscence, unholy desires) and covetousness, which is idolatry: for which things' sake the wrath of God cometh on the *children of disobedience.*

21. I Thessalonians 1:8 For from you sounded out the word of the Lord not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but also in every place your faith to God-ward is spread abroad; . . . [The Amplified Bible says- **faith in God is the leaning of your whole personality on Him in complete trust and confidence in His power, wisdom and goodness. DO IT!**]

22. Hebrews 5:7 Who in the days of His flesh, when He had offered up prayers and supplications with strong crying and tears unto Him that was able to save Him from death and was heard in that He feared; [The Amplified Bible translates feared - His godly fear, His piety (that is, in that **He shrank from the horrors of separation from the bright presence of the Father)** [Covet the bright presence of the Father.]

23. Hebrews 12:11 Now no chastening for the present seemeth

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yielded the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby. [The A.V. says this righteousness is conformity to God’s will in purpose, thought and action. WORK AT IT!]

24. Revelation 12:11 And they overcame him by the blood of the lamb, and by the word of their testimony; **and they loved not their lives unto the death.**

25. Revelation 13:10 He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the word must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints. [Overcoming calls for patience and faith.]

26. Revelation 14:12 **Here is the patience of the saints: here are they that keep the commandments of God, and the faith of Jesus.** [Steadfastness and endurance-A.V.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to come out of trouble:

Summary -- Having done all to stand.

1. Psalms 34:17 *The righteous cry, and the Lord heareth, and delivereth them out of all their troubles.*

2. Psalms 37:39,40 *But the salvation of the righteous is of the Lord: He is their strength in the time of trouble. And the Lord shall help them and deliver them: He shall deliver them from the wicked, and save them, because they trust in Him.*

3. Psalms 40:1-4 *I waited patiently for the Lord, and He inclined unto me, and heard my cry. He brought me up also out of an horrible pit, out of the miry clay, and set my feet upon a rock, and established my goings. And He hath put a new song in my mouth, even praise unto our God: many shall see it, and fear, and shall trust in the Lord. Blessed is that man that maketh the Lord his trust, and respecteth not the proud, nor such as turn aside to lies.*

4. Psalms 41:11 *By this I know that Thou favourest me, because mine enemy doth not triumph over me.*

5. Psalms 50:5,14,15 *Gather My saints together unto Me; those that have made a covenant with Me by sacrifice. Vs 14 Offer unto God thanksgiving; and pay thy vows unto the most High: And call upon Me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee, and thou shalt glorify Me.*

6. Psalms 57:1,2 *Be merciful unto me, O God, be merciful unto me: for my soul trusteth in thee: yea, in the shadow of thy wings will I make my refuge, until these calamities be overpast. I will cry unto God most high; unto God that performeth all things for me.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

7. Psalms 94:16-18 Who will rise up for me against the evildoers? or who will stand up for me against the workers of iniquity? *Unless the Lord had been my help, my soul had almost dwelt in silence.* When I said, My foot slippeth; thy mercy, O Lord, held me up.

8. Psalms 107:6 Then *they cried unto the Lord in their trouble,* and He delivered them out of their distresses.

9. Psalms 144:1,2 Blessed be the Lord my strength, which teacheth my hands to war, and my fingers to fight: *My goodness, and my fortress; my high tower, and my deliverer; my shield, and He in whom I trust; who subdueth my people under me.*

10. Psalms 145:18-20 The Lord is nigh unto all them that call upon Him, *to all that call upon Him in truth.* He will fulfil the desire of them *that fear Him:* He also will hear their cry, and will save them. The Lord preserveth all them *that love Him:* but all the wicked will He destroy.

11. Isaiah 30:15 For thus saith the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel; *In returning and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength:* and ye would not.

12. Isaiah 33:14-16 The sinners in Zion are afraid; fearfulness hath surprised the hypocrites. Who among us shall dwell with the devouring fire? who among us shall dwell with everlasting burnings? He that *walketh righteously, and speaketh uprightly; he that despiseth the gain of oppressions, that shaketh his hands from holding of bribes, that stoppeth his ears from hearing of blood, and shutteth his eyes from seeing evil; He shall dwell on high: his place of defence shall be the munitions of rocks: bread shall be given him; his waters shall be sure.*

13. Isaiah 37:15-23 And Hezekiah *prayed unto the Lord, saying, O Lord of hosts, God of Israel, that dwellest between the*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*cherubims, Thou art the God, even Thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: Thou hast made heaven and earth. Incline Thine ear, O Lord, and hear; open Thine eyes, O Lord, and see: and hear all the words of Sennacherib, which hath sent to reproach the living God. Of a truth, Lord, the kings of Assyria have laid waste all the nations, and their countries, And have cast their gods into the fire: for they were no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them. Now therefore, O Lord our God, save us from his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that thou art the Lord, even thou only. Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent unto Hezekiah, saying, Thus saith the Lord God of Israel, Whereas thou hast prayed to me against Sennacherib king of Assyria: This is the word which the Lord hath spoken concerning him; The virgin, the daughter of Zion, hath despised thee, and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head at thee. Whom hast thou reproached and blasphemed? and against whom hast thou exalted thy voice, and lifted up thine eyes on high? even against the Holy One of Israel.*

14. Luke 18:1 And H spake a parable unto them to this end, that men ought always to pray, and not to faint;

15. II Thessalonians 1:4 -6 So that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of God *for your patience and faith* in all your persecutions and tribulations that ye endure: Which is a manifest token of the righteous judgment of God, that ye may be counted worthy of the kingdom of God, for which ye also suffer: Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to them that trouble you;

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to turn away wrath:

Summary -- Repent and do right.

1. Proverbs 15:1 A soft answer turneth away wrath: but grievous words stir up anger.

2. Isaiah 27:9 By this therefore shall the iniquity of Jacob be purged; and this is all the fruit to take away his sin; when he maketh all the stones of the altar as chalkstones that are beaten in sunder, the groves and images shall not stand up. [Get rid of all idols and worship God only.]

3. Isaiah 28:6-14 Is not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke? Is it not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him; and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh? Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thine health shall spring forth speedily: and thy righteousness shall go before thee; the glory of the Lord shall be thy rereward. *Then shalt thou call, and the Lord shall answer; thou shalt cry, and He shall say, Here I am.* If thou take away from the midst of thee the yoke, the putting forth of the finger, and speaking vanity; and if thou draw out thy soul to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul; then shall thy light rise in obscurity, and thy darkness be as the noonday: And the Lord shall guide thee continually, and satisfy thy soul in drought, and make fat thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not. *And they that shall be of thee shall build the old waste places: thou shalt raise up the foundations of many generations; and thou shalt be called, The repairer of the breach, The restorer of paths to dwell*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*in.* If thou turn away thy foot from the sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on My holy day; and call the sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honourable; and shalt honour Him, not doing thine own ways, nor finding thine own pleasure, nor speaking thine own words: Then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord; and I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth, and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father: for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.

4. Jeremiah 6:8 Be thou instructed, O Jerusalem, lest My soul depart from thee; lest I make thee desolate, a land not inhabited.

5. Zephaniah 2:1-3 Gather yourselves together, yea, gather together, O nation not desired; before the decree bring forth, before the day pass as the chaff, before the fierce anger of the Lord come upon you, before the day of the Lord's anger come upon you. *Seek ye the Lord, all ye meek of the earth, which have wrought His judgment; seek righteousness, seek meekness:* it may be ye shall be hid in the day of the Lord's anger.

6. Zephaniah 3:1,2 Woe to her that is filthy and polluted, to the oppressing city! She obeyed not the voice; she received not correction; she trusted not in the Lord; she drew not near to her God. [Turn His wrath by receiving cleansing and obeying His voice.]

7. Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

## How to discern a true prophet from a false one:

Summary -- Does their life glorify God and do their prophesies come to pass?

1. Isaiah 49:5 And now, saith the Lord that formed me from the womb to be His servant, to bring Jacob again to Him, Though Israel be not gathered, yet shall I be glorious in the eyes of the Lord, and my God shall be my strength. [True prophets are raised up by God to bring His people back to Him.]

2. Isaiah 56:10 His watchmen are blind: they are all ignorant, they are all dumb dogs, they cannot bark; sleeping, lying down, loving to slumber. [True prophets are raised up by God to warn the people of danger.]

3. Jeremiah 23:17-22 They say still unto them that despise Me, The Lord hath said, Ye shall have peace; and they say unto every one that walketh after the imagination of his own heart, No evil shall come upon you. *For who hath stood in the counsel of the Lord, and hath perceived and heard His word? who hath marked His word, and heard it?* Behold, a whirlwind of the Lord is gone forth in fury, even a grievous whirlwind: it shall fall grievously upon the head of the wicked. The anger of the Lord shall not return, until He have executed, and till He have performed the thoughts of his heart: in the latter days ye shall consider it perfectly. I have not sent these prophets, yet they ran: I have not spoken to them, yet they prophesied. *But if they had stood in My counsel, and had caused My people to hear My words, then they should have turned them from their evil way, and from the evil of their doings.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

4. Ezekiel 13:3-13,16-22 Thus saith the Lord God; Woe unto the foolish prophets, that follow their own spirit, and have seen nothing! O Israel, thy prophets are like the foxes in the deserts. *Ye have not gone up into the gaps, neither made up the hedge for the house of Israel to stand in the battle in the day of the Lord.* 6: They have seen vanity and lying divination, saying, The Lord saith: and the Lord hath not sent them: and they have made others to hope that they would confirm the word. Have ye not seen a vain vision, and have ye not spoken a lying divination, whereas ye say, The Lord saith it; albeit I have not spoken? Therefore thus saith the Lord God; *Because ye have spoken vanity, and seen lies,* therefore, behold, I am against you, saith the Lord God. And Mine hand shall be upon the prophets that see vanity, and that divine lies: they shall not be in the assembly of my people, neither shall they be written in the writing of the house of Israel, neither shall they enter into the land of Israel; and ye shall know that I am the Lord God. *Because, even because they have seduced my people,* saying, Peace; and there was no peace; and one built up a wall, and, lo, others daubed it with untempered mortar: Say unto them which daub it with untempered mortar, that it shall fall: there shall be an overflowing shower; and ye, O great hailstones, shall fall; and a stormy wind shall rend it. Lo, when the wall is fallen, shall it not be said unto you, Where is the daubing wherewith ye have daubed it? Therefore thus saith the Lord God; I will even rend it with a stormy wind in My fury; and there shall be an overflowing shower in Mine anger, and great hailstones in My fury to consume it Vs 16: To wit, the prophets of Israel which prophesy concerning Jerusalem, and which see visions of peace for her, and there is no peace, saith the Lord God. Likewise, thou son of man, set thy face against the daughters of thy people, which prophesy out of their own heart; and prophesy thou against them, And say, Thus saith the Lord God; Woe to the women that sew pillows to all armholes, and make kerchiefs upon the head of every stature to hunt souls! Will ye hunt the souls of my people, and will ye save the souls alive that come unto you? *And will ye pollute me among My people* for handfuls of barley and for pieces of bread, to slay the souls that should not die, and to save the

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

souls alive that should not live, by your lying to My people that hear your lies? Wherefore thus saith the Lord God; Behold, I am against your pillows, wherewith ye there hunt the souls to make them fly, and I will tear them from your arms, and will let the souls go, even the souls that ye hunt to make them fly. Your kerchiefs also will I tear, and deliver My people out of your hand, and they shall be no more in your hand to be hunted; and ye shall know that I am the Lord. [Agains sorcery] *Because with lies ye have made the heart of the righteous sad, whom I have not made sad; and strengthened the hands of the wicked, that he should not return from his wicked way, by promising him life: Therefore ye shall see no more vanity, nor divine divinations: for I will deliver My people out of your hand: and ye shall know that I am the Lord.*

5. Ezekeil 22:26 : Her priests have violated My law, and have profaned Mine holy things: *they have put no difference between the holy and profane, neither have they shewed difference between the unclean and the clean,* and have hid their eyes from My Sabbaths, and I am profaned among them.

6. Ezekiel 34:2-4 Son of man, prophesy against the shepherds of Israel, prophesy, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord God unto the shepherds; Woe be to the shepherds of Israel that do feed themselves! *should not the shepherds feed the flocks?* Ye eat the fat, and ye clothe you with the wool, ye kill them that are fed: but ye feed not the flock. *The diseased have ye not strengthened, neither have ye healed that which was sick, neither have ye bound up that which was broken, neither have ye brought again that which was driven away, neither have ye sought that which was lost;* but with force and with cruelty have ye ruled them.

7. Hosea 5:10 The princes of Judah were like *them that remove the bound:* therefore I will pour out My wrath upon them like water. [God’s prophets do not remove the boundaries that God has established.]

8. Micah 3:5,8 Thus saith the Lord concerning the prophets that

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

make My people err, that bite with their teeth, and cry, Peace; and he that putteth not into their mouths, they even prepare war against him. Vs 8 *But truly I am full of power by the spirit of the Lord, and of judgment, and of might, to declare unto Jacob his transgression, and to Israel his sin.*

9. Zephaniah 3:4,7 Her prophets are light and treacherous persons: her priests have polluted the sanctuary, they have done violence to the law. Vs 7 I said, Surely thou wilt fear Me, thou wilt receive instruction; so their dwelling should not be cut off, howsoever I punished them: but they rose early, and corrupted all their doings. [True prophets instill the reverential fear of the Lord in their hearers.]

10. Matthew 7:15-17 Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. Ye shall know them by their fruits. Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to ask and receive:

Summary -- Ask according to God’s will and believe you receive.

1. Genesis 25:20,21,26 And Isaac was forty years old when he took Rebekah to wife, the daughter of Bethuel the Syrian of Padan-aram, the sister to Laban the Syrian. And Isaac entreated the Lord for his wife, because she was barren: and the Lord was entreated of him, and Rebekah his wife conceived. Vs 26 And after that came his brother out, and his hand took hold on Esau's heel; and his name was called Jacob: and Isaac was threescore years old when she bare them.

2. I Kings 18:36-38 And it came to pass at the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near, and said, Lord God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that thou art God in Israel, and that I am thy servant, and that I have done all these things at thy word. Hear me, O Lord, hear me, that this people may know that thou art the Lord God, and that thou hast turned their heart back again. Then the fire of the Lord fell, and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.

3. II Kings 22:19 Because thine heart was tender, and thou hast humbled thyself before the Lord, when thou heardest what I spake against this place, and against the inhabitants thereof, that they should become a desolation and a curse, and hast rent thy clothes, and wept before me; I also have heard thee, saith the Lord.

4. Psalms 4:3 But know that the Lord hath set apart him that is godly for himself: the Lord will hear when I call unto him.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. Psalms 34:17 The righteous cry, and the Lord heareth, and delivereth them out of all their troubles.

6. Psalms 89:34 My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of My lips.

7. Isaiah 37:14-22 : And Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the messengers, and read it: and Hezekiah went up unto the house of the LORD, and spread it before the Lord. And Hezekiah prayed unto the Lord, saying, O Lord of hosts, God of Israel, that dwellest between the cherubims, Thou art the God, even Thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: Thou hast made heaven and earth. Incline Thine ear, O Lord, and hear; open Thine eyes, O Lord, and see: and hear all the words of Sennacherib, which hath sent to reproach the living God. Of a truth, Lord, the kings of Assyria have laid waste all the nations, and their countries, And have cast their gods into the fire: for they were no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them. Now therefore, O Lord our God, save us from his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that Thou art the Lord, even Thou only. Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent unto Hezekiah, saying, Thus saith the Lord God of Israel, Whereas thou hast prayed to Me against Sennacherib king of Assyria: this is the word which the Lord hath spoken concerning him; The virgin, the daughter of Zion, hath despised thee, and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head at thee.

8. Isaiah 38:1-6 In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz came unto him, and said unto him, Thus saith the Lord, Set thine house in order: for thou shalt die, and not live. Then Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall, and prayed unto the Lord, and said, Remember now, O Lord, I beseech Thee, how I have walked before Thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in Thy sight. And Hezekiah wept sore. Then came the word of the Lord to Isaiah,

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

saying, Go, and say to Hezekiah, Thus saith the Lord, the God of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will add unto thy days fifteen years. And I will deliver thee and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria: and I will defend this city.

9. Isaiah 66:2 For all those things hath Mine hand made, and those things have been, saith the Lord: but to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a *contrite spirit, and trembleth at My word.*

10. Matthew 7:11,12 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father which is in heaven give good things to them that ask him? Therefore all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them: for this is the law and the prophets.

11. Matthew 18:19 Again I say unto you, That if two of you shall agree on earth as touching any thing that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father which is in heaven.

12. Mark 11:23,24 For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith. Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.

13. Luke 11:8,9 I say unto you, Though he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend, yet because of his importunity he will rise and give him as many as he needeth. And I say unto you, Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

14. Luke 18:7,8 : And shall not God avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them? I tell

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth?

15. John 14:13 And whatsoever ye shall ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.

16. Philippians 4:6 Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.

17. James 4:2,3 Ye lust, and have not: ye kill, and desire to have, and cannot obtain: ye fight and war, yet ye have not, because ye ask not. 3: Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss, that ye may consume it upon your lusts.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to pray:

Summary -- With prayers and supplications.

1. Genesis 32:9-12 And Jacob said, O God of my father Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, the Lord which saidst unto me, Return unto thy country, and to thy kindred, and I will deal well with thee: I am not worthy of the least of all the mercies, and of all the truth, which Thou hast shewed unto thy servant; for with my staff I passed over this Jordan; and now I am become two bands. Deliver me, I pray Thee, from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau: for I fear him, lest he will come and smite me, and the mother with the children. And Thou saidst, I will surely do thee good, and make thy seed as the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for multitude.

2. Exodus 32:11-14 And Moses besought the Lord his God, and said, Lord, why doth Thy wrath wax hot against Thy people, which Thou hast brought forth out of the land of Egypt with great power, and with a mighty hand? Wherefore should the Egyptians speak, and say, For mischief did He bring them out, to slay them in the mountains, and to consume them from the face of the earth? Turn from Thy fierce wrath, and repent of this evil against Thy people. Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, Thy servants, to whom Thou swarest by Thine own self, and saidst unto them, I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven, and all this land that I have spoken of will I give unto your seed, and they shall inherit it for ever. And the Lord repented of the evil which He thought to do unto His people.

3. I Kings 8:23-45 And he said, Lord God of Israel, there is no God like Thee, in heaven above, or on earth beneath, who keepest covenant and mercy with Thy servants that walk before

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

Thee with all their heart: who hast kept with Thy servant David My father that Thou promisedst him: Thou spakest also with Thy mouth, and hast fulfilled it with Thine hand, as it is this day. Therefore now, Lord God of Israel, keep with Thy servant David My father that thou promisedst him, saying, There shall not fail thee a man in My sight to sit on the throne of Israel; so that thy children take heed to their way, that they walk before Me as thou hast walked before Me. And now, O God of Israel, let Thy word, I pray thee, be verified, which Thou spakest unto Thy servant David My father. But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain Thee; how much less this house that I have builded? Yet have Thou respect unto the prayer of Thy servant, and to his supplication, O Lord my God, to hearken unto the cry and to the prayer, which thy servant prayeth before thee to day: that Thine eyes may be open toward this house night and day, even toward the place of which Thou hast said, My name shall be there: that Thou mayest hearken unto the prayer which thy servant shall make toward this place. And hearken Thou to the supplication of Thy servant, and of Thy people Israel, when they shall pray toward this place: and hear thou in heaven Thy dwelling place: and when Thou hearest, forgive. If any man trespass against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and the oath come before Thine altar in this house: then hear Thou in heaven, and do, and judge Thy servants, condemning the wicked, to bring his way upon his head; and justifying the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness. When Thy people Israel be smitten down before the enemy, because they have sinned against Thee, and shall turn again to Thee, and confess Thy name, and pray, and make supplication unto Thee in this house: then hear Thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of Thy people Israel, and bring them again unto the land which Thou gavest unto their fathers. When heaven is shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against thee; if they pray toward this place, and confess Thy name, and turn from their sin, when Thou afflictest them: then hear Thou in heaven, and forgive the sin of thy servants, and of Thy people Israel, that Thou *teach them the good way wherein they should*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*wak*, and give rain upon Thy land, which Thou hast given to Thy people for an inheritance. If there be in the land famine, if there be pestilence, blasting, mildew, locust, or if there be caterpillar; if their enemy besiege them in the land of their cities; whatsoever plague, whatsoever sickness there be; what prayer and supplication soever be made by any man, or by all Thy people Israel, which shall know every man the plague of his own heart, and spread forth his hands toward this house: then hear Thou in heaven Thy dwelling place, and forgive, and do, and give to every man according to his ways, whose heart Thou knowest; (for Thou, even Thou only, knowest the hearts of all the children of men;) that they may fear thee all the days that they live in the land which Thou gavest unto our fathers. Moreover concerning a stranger, that is not of Thy people Israel, but cometh out of a far country for Thy name's sake; (for they shall hear of Thy great name, and of Thy strong hand, and of Thy stretched out arm;) when he shall come and pray toward this house; hear Thou in heaven Thy dwelling place, and do according to all that the stranger calleth to Thee for: that all people of the earth may Thy name, to fear Thee, as do thy people Israel; and that they may know that this house, which I have builded, is called by Thy name. If Thy people go out to battle against their enemy, whithersoever Thou shalt send them, and shall pray unto the Lord toward the city which Thou hast chosen, and toward the house that I have built for Thy name: then hear Thou in heaven their prayer and their supplication, and maintain their cause. 9:2,3 That the Lord appeared to Solomon the second time, as he had appeared unto him at Gibeon. And the Lord said unto him, I have heard thy prayer and thy supplication, that thou hast made before me: I have hallowed this house, which thou hast built, to put My name there for ever; and Mine eyes and Mine heart shall be there perpetually.

4. I Kings 18:36-38 And it came to pass at the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near, and said, Lord God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that Thou art God in Israel, and that I am Thy servant, and that I have done all these things at Thy word. Hear

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

me, O Lord, hear me, that this people may know that Thou art the Lord God, and that Thou hast turned their heart back again. Then the fire of the Lord fell, and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.

5. II Chronicles 7:14-16 If My people, which are called by My name, shall *humble themselves, and pray, and seek My face, and turn from their wicked ways;* then will I hear from heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land. Now Mine eyes shall be open, and Mine ears attent unto the prayer that is made in this place. For now have I chosen and sanctified this house, that My name may be there for ever: and Mine eyes and Mine heart shall be there perpetually.

6. II Chronicles 14:11,12 And Asa cried unto the Lord his God, and said, Lord, it is nothing with Thee to help, whether with many, or with them that have no power: help us, O Lord our God; for we rest on Thee, and in Thy name we go against this multitude. O Lord, Thou art our God; let not man prevail against Thee. So the Lord smote the Ethiopians before Asa and before Judah; and the Ethiopians fled.

7. II Chronicles 20:6-13 And said, O Lord God of our fathers, art not Thou God in heaven? And rulest not Thou over all the kingdoms of the heathen? And in Thine hand is there not power and might, so that none is able to withstand Thee? Art not Thou our God, who didst drive out the inhabitants of this land before Thy people Israel, and gavest it to the seed of Abraham Thy friend for ever? And they dwelt therein, and have built Thee a sanctuary therein for Thy name, saying, if, when evil cometh upon us, as the sword, judgment, or pestilence, or famine, we stand before this house, and in Thy presence, (for Thy name is in this house,) and cry unto Thee in our affliction, then Thou wilt hear and help. And now, behold, the children of Ammon and Moab and mount Seir, whom Thou wouldest not let Israel invade, when they came out of the land of Egypt, but they turned from them, and destroyed them



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

not; behold, I say, how they reward us, to come to cast us out of Thy possession, which Thou hast given us to inherit. O our God, wilt Thou not judge them? For we have no might against this great company that cometh against us; neither know we what to do: but our eyes are upon Thee. And all Judah stood before the Lord, with their little ones, their wives, and their children.

8. Nehemiah 4:4,5 Hear, O our God; for we are despised: and turn their reproach upon their own head, and give them for a prey in the land of captivity: and cover not their iniquity, and let not their sin be blotted out from before Thee: for they have provoked Thee to anger before the builders.

9. Psalms 37:5 Commit thy way unto the Lord; trust also in Him; and He shall bring it to pass.

10. Psalms 69:1-7 Save me, O God; for the waters are come in unto my soul. I sink in deep mire, where there is no standing: I am come into deep waters, where the floods overflow me. I am weary of my crying: my throat is dried: mine eyes fail while I wait for my God. They that hate me without a cause are more than the hairs of mine head: they that would destroy me, being mine enemies wrongfully, are mighty: then I restored that which I took not away. O God, Thou knowest my foolishness; and my sins are not hid from thee. Let not them that wait on Thee, O Lord God of hosts, be ashamed for my sake: let not those that seek Thee be confounded for my sake, O God of Israel. Because for Thy sake I have borne reproach; shame hath covered my face. Vs 15-20 Let not the waterflood overflow me, neither let the deep swallow me up, and let not the pit shut her mouth upon me. Hear me, O Lord; for Thy lovingkindness is good: turn unto me according to the multitude of Thy tender mercies. And hide not Thy face from Thy servant; for I am in trouble: hear me speedily. Draw nigh unto my soul, and redeem it: deliver me because of mine enemies. Thou hast known my reproach, and my shame, and my dishonour: mine adversaries are all before Thee. Reproach hath broken my heart; and I am full of heaviness: and I looked for some to take

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

pity, but there was none; and for comforters, but I found none. Vs 29-34 But I am poor and sorrowful: let Thy salvation, O God, set me up on high. I will praise the name of God with a song, and will magnify Him with thanksgiving. This also shall please the Lord better than an ox or bullock that hath horns and hoofs. The humble shall see this, and be glad: and your heart shall live that seek God. For the Lord heareth the poor, and despiseth not His prisoners. Let the heaven and earth praise Him, the seas, and everything that moveth therein.

11. Psalm 86:1-13 Bow down Thine ear, O Lord hear me: for I am poor and needy. Preserve my soul; for I am holy: O Thou my God, save Thy servant that trusteth in Thee. Be merciful unto me, O Lord: for I cry unto Thee daily. Rejoice the soul of Thy servant: for unto Thee, O Lord, do I lift up my soul. For Thou, Lord, art good, and ready to forgive; and plenteous in mercy unto all them that call upon Thee. Give ear, O Lord, unto my prayer; and attend to the voice of my supplications. In the day of my trouble I will call upon Thee: for Thou wilt answer me. Among the gods there is none like unto Thee, O Lord; neither are there any works like unto Thy works. All nations whom Thou hast made shall come and worship before Thee, O Lord; and shall glorify Thy name. For Thou art great, and doest wondrous things: Thou art God alone. Teach me Thy way, O Lord; I will walk in Thy truth: unite my heart to fear Thy name. I will praise Thee, O Lord my God, with all my heart: and I will glorify Thy name for evermore. For great is Thy mercy toward me: and Thou hast delivered my soul from the lowest hell.

12. Psalms 107:1-7 O give thanks unto the Lord, for He is good: for His mercy endureth for ever. Let the redeemed of the Lord say so, whom He hath redeemed from the hand of the enemy; and gathered them out of the lands, from the east, and from the west, from the north, and from the south. They wandered in the wilderness in a solitary way; they found no city to dwell in. Hungry and thirsty, their soul fainted in them. Then they cried unto the Lord in their trouble, and He delivered them out of their distresses.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

And He led them forth by the right way, that they might go to a city of habitation.

13. Isaiah 19:20 And it shall be for a sign and for a witness unto the Lord of hosts in the land of Egypt: for they shall cry unto the Lord because of the oppressors, and He shall send them a Saviour, and a great one, and He shall deliver them.

14. Isaiah 37:14-22 And Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the messengers, and read it: and Hezekiah went up unto the house of the Lord, and spread it before the Lord. And Hezekiah prayed unto the Lord, saying, O Lord of hosts, God of Israel, that dwellest between the cherubims, Thou art the God, even Thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: Thou hast made heaven and earth. Incline Thine ear, O Lord, and hear; open Thine eyes, O Lord, and see: and hear all the words of Sennacherib, which hath sent to reproach the living God. Of a truth, Lord, the kings of Assyria have laid waste all the nations, and their countries, and have cast their gods into the fire: for they were no gods, but the work of men's hands, wood and stone: therefore they have destroyed them. Now therefore, O Lord our God, save us from his hand, that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that Thou art the Lord, even Thou only. Then Isaiah the son of Amoz sent unto Hezekiah, saying, Thus saith the Lord God of Israel, Whereas thou hast prayed to Me against Sennacherib king of Assyria: this is the word which the Lord hath spoken concerning him; the virgin, the daughter of Zion, hath despised thee, and laughed thee to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem hath shaken her head at thee.

15. Isaiah 38:1-7 In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz came unto him, and said unto him, Thus saith the Lord, Set thine house in order: for thou shalt die, and not live. Then Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall, and prayed unto the Lord, and said, Remember now, O Lord, I beseech Thee, how I have walked before Thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in Thy sight. And

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

Hezekiah wept sore. Then came the word of the Lord to Isaiah, saying, Go, and say to Hezekiah, Thus saith the Lord, the God of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will add unto thy days fifteen years. And I will deliver thee and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria: and I will defend this city. And this shall be a sign unto thee from the Lord, that the Lord will do this thing that he hath spoken;

16. Matthew 6:7 But when ye pray, *use not vain repetitions*, as the heathen do: for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking. Be not ye therefore like unto them: for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of, before ye ask him. After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be Thy name. Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven. Give us this day our daily bread. And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil: For Thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.

17. Romans 8:26-28 Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And he that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because He maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God. And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose.

18. II Corinthians 13:7 Now I pray to God that ye do no evil; not that we should appear approved, but that ye should do that which is honest, though we be as reprobates.

19. Ephesians 2:18 For through Him we both have access by one Spirit unto the Father.

20. Hebrews 4:14-16 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, *let*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*us hold fast our profession.* For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin. Let us therefore *come boldly unto the throne of grace*, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.

21. Hebrews 13:18,19 Pray for us: for we trust we have a good conscience, in all things willing to live honestly. But I beseech you the rather to do this, that I may be restored to you the sooner.

22. James 5:16 Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. *The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to get your prayers answered:

Summary -- Abide in Jesus.

1. Psalms 34:17 The *righteous* cry, and the Lord heareth, and delivereth them out of all their troubles. [Abide in god's righteousness.]
2. Psalms 44:3 For they got not the land in possession by their own sword, neither did their own arm save them: but Thy right hand, and Thine arm, and the light of Thy countenance, *because Thou hadst a favour unto them.* [Abide in God's favour.]
3. Psalms 66:18 If I regard iniquity in my heart, the Lord will not hear me:
4. Psalms 81:8-10 Hear, O My people, and I will testify unto thee: O Israel, if thou wilt hearken unto Me; *there shall no strange god be in thee; neither shalt thou worship any strange god.* I am the Lord Thy God, which brought thee out of the land of Egypt: open thy mouth wide, and I will fill it.
5. Psalms 84:11 For the Lord God is a sun and shield: the Lord will give grace and glory: *no good thing will He withhold from them that walk uprightly.*
6. Psalms 145:18,19 The Lord is nigh unto all them that call upon Him, to all *that call upon Him in truth.* He will fulfil the desire of *them that fear* Him: He also will hear their cry, and will save them.
7. Isaiah 38:2-5 Then Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall, and prayed unto the Lord, and said, Remember now, O Lord, I

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

beseech Thee, *how I have walked before Thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in thy sight.* And Hezekiah wept sore. Then came the word of the Lord to Isaiah, saying, go, and say to Hezekiah, Thus saith the Lord, the God of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will add unto thy days fifteen years.

8. Isaiah 56:6,7 Also the sons of the stranger, that join themselves to the Lord, to serve Him, and *to love the name of the Lord, to be His servants, every one that keepeth the Sabbath from polluting it, and taketh hold of My covenant;* even them will I bring to My holy mountain, and make them joyful in My house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted upon Mine altar; for Mine house shall be called an house of prayer for all people.

9. Isaiah 58:5-14 Is it such a fast that I have chosen? a day for a man to afflict his soul? is it to bow down his head as a bulrush, and to spread sackcloth and ashes under him? wilt thou call this a fast, and an acceptable day to the Lord? *Is not this the fast that I have chosen? to loose the bands of wickedness, to undo the heavy burdens, and to let the oppressed go free, and that ye break every yoke? Is it not to deal thy bread to the hungry, and that thou bring the poor that are cast out to thy house? when thou seest the naked, that thou cover him; and that thou hide not thyself from thine own flesh? Then shall thy light break forth as the morning, and thine health shall spring forth speedily: and thy righteousness shall go before thee; the glory of the Lord shall be thy rereward. Then shalt thou call, and the Lord shall answer; thou shalt cry, and He shall say, Here I am. If thou take away from the midst of thee the yoke, the putting forth of the finger, and speaking vanity; and if thou draw out thy soul to the hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul; then shall thy light rise in obscurity, and thy darkness be as the noonday: and the Lord shall guide thee continually, and satisfy thy soul in drought, and make fat thy bones: and thou shalt be like a watered garden, and like a spring of water, whose waters fail not. And they that shall be of thee shall build the old waste places:*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*thou shalt raise up the foundations of many generations; and thou shalt be called, The repairer of the breach, The restorer of paths to dwell in. If thou turn away thy foot from the Sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on My holy day; and call the Sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honourable; and shalt honour Him, not doing thine own ways, nor finding thine own pleasure, nor speaking thine own words: Then shalt thou delight thyself in the Lord; and I will cause thee to ride upon the high places of the earth, and feed thee with the heritage of Jacob thy father: for the mouth of the Lord hath spoken it.*

10. Jeremiah 14:10-12 Thus saith the Lord unto this people, Thus have they loved to wander, they have not refrained their feet, therefore the Lord doth not accept them; He will now remember their iniquity, and visit their sins. Then said the Lord unto me, Pray not for this people for their good. When they fast, I will not hear their cry; and when they offer burnt offering and an oblation, I will not accept them: but I will consume them by the sword, and by the famine, and by the pestilence.

11. Matthew 8:13 And Jesus said unto the centurion, Go thy way; *and as thou hast believed, so be it done unto thee.* And his servant was healed in the selfsame hour.

12. Matthew 21:22 And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive.

13. Mark 5:34-36 And he said unto her, Daughter, *thy faith hath made thee whole*; go in peace, and be whole of thy plague. While He yet spake, there came from the ruler of the synagogue's house certain which said, Thy daughter is dead: why troublest thou the Master any further? As soon as Jesus heard the word that was spoken, He saith unto the ruler of the synagogue, *Be not afraid, only believe.*

14. Mark 9:29 And He said unto them, This kind can come forth by nothing, but by *prayer and fasting.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

15. Mark 10:52 And Jesus said unto him, Go thy way; *thy faith hath made thee whole*. And immediately he received his sight, and followed Jesus in the way.

16. Mark 11:22-24 And Jesus answering saith unto them, Have faith in God. For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; *and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith*. Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, *believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them*.

17. Luke 7:7-9 Wherefore neither thought I myself worthy to come unto thee: *but say in a word, and my servant shall be healed*. For I also am a man set under authority, having under me soldiers, and I say unto one, Go, and he goeth; and to another, Come, and he cometh; and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth it. When Jesus heard these things, He marvelled at him, and turned Him about, and said unto the people that followed him, I say unto you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel.

18. Luke 11:8-13 I say unto you, Though he will not rise and give him, because he is his friend, yet because of his importunity he will rise and give him as many as he needeth. And I say unto you, *Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you*. For every one that asketh receiveth; and he that seeketh findeth; and to him that knocketh it shall be opened. If a son shall ask bread of any of you that is a father, will he give him a stone? or if he ask a fish, will he for a fish give him a serpent? Or if he shall ask an egg, will he offer him a scorpion? *If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?*

19. Luke 18:7,8 And shall not God avenge His own elect, which

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

cry day and night unto Him, though he bear long with them? I tell you that He will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, *shall he find faith on the earth?*

20. John 9:31 Now we know that God heareth not sinners: but if any man be a *worshipper of God, and doeth His will, him he heareth.*

21. John 14:12-15 Verily, verily, I say unto you, *He that believeth on Me*, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto My Father. *And whatsoever ye shall ask in My name, that will I do*, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If ye shall ask any thing in My name, I will do it. *If ye love me, keep My commandments.*

22. John 16:24 Hitherto have ye asked nothing in My name: ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full.

23. I John 3:22 And whatsoever we ask, we receive of Him, *because we keep His commandments, and do those things that are pleasing in His sight.*

24. I John 5:14,15 And this is the confidence that we have in Him, *that, if we ask any thing according to His will, He heareth us: And if we know that He hear us, whatsoever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of Him.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to pray for the Saints:

Summary -- That they be conformed into the image of Christ and for their welfare, happiness and spiritual growth.

1. Matthew 9:38 Pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth labourers into his harvest.
2. Luke 21:36 Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man.
3. Luke 22:32 But I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not: and when thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren.
4. John 17:9-17 I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them which Thou hast given me; for they are Thine. And all mine are Thine, and Thine are mine; and I am glorified in them. And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to Thee. Holy Father, keep through Thine own name those whom Thou hast given Me, that they may be one, as we are. While I was with them in the world, I kept them in Thy name: those that Thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled. And now come I to Thee; and these things I speak in the world, that they might have My joy fulfilled in themselves. I have given them Thy word; and the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. I pray not that Thou shouldest take them out of the world, but that Thou shouldest keep them from the evil. They are not of the world, even as I am not of the world. Sanctify them through Thy truth: Thy word is truth.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. II Corinthians 13:7 Now I pray to God that ye do no evil; not that we should appear approved, but that ye should do that which is honest, though we be as reprobates.

6. Galatians 4:19 My little children, of whom I travail in birth again until Christ be formed in you,

7. Philippians 1:9-11 And this I pray, *that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and in all judgment; that ye may approve things that are excellent; that ye may be sincere and without offence till the day of Christ; being filled with the fruits of righteousness*, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.

8. Colossians 1:9-12 For this cause we also, since the day we heard it, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire that ye might be filled with the knowledge of his will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding; 10: That ye might *walk worthy of the Lord* unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God; strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness; giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light:

9. Colossians 4:12 Epaphras, who is one of you, a servant of Christ, saluteth you, always labouring fervently for you in prayers, *that ye may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God.*

10. II Thessalonians 1:11,12 Wherefore also we pray always for you, that our God would count you worthy of this calling, and fulfil all the good pleasure of his goodness, and the work of faith with power: that the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified in you, and ye in him, according to the grace of our God and the Lord Jesus Christ.

11. I Peter 3:9 Not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: *but contrariwise blessing*; knowing that ye are thereunto called, that ye

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

should inherit a blessing. (A.V. says praying for their welfare, happiness, and protection.)

12. III John 2 Beloved, I wish [pray it] above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health, even as thy soul prospereth.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to praise the Lord:

Summary -- Make a joyful noise unto the Lord.

1. II chronicles 29:30 Moreover Hezekiah the king and the princes commanded the Levites to sing praise unto the Lord with the words of David, and of Asaph the seer. And they sang praises with gladness, and they bowed their heads and worshipped.

2. Psalms 98 O sing unto the Lord a new song; for He hath done marvelous things: His right hand, and His holy arm, hath gotten Him the victory. The Lord hath made known His salvation: His righteousness hath He openly shewed in the sight of the heathen. He hath remembered His mercy and His truth toward the house of Israel: all the ends of the earth have seen the salvation of our God. Make a joyful noise unto the Lord, all the earth: make a loud noise, and rejoice, and sing praise. Sing unto the Lord with the harp; with the harp, and the voice of a psalm. With trumpets and sound of cornet make a joyful noise before the Lord, the King. Let the sea roar, and the fulness thereof; the world, and they that dwell therein. Let the floods clap their hands: let the hills be joyful together before the Lord; for He cometh to judge the earth: with righteousness shall He judge the world, and the people with equity.

3. Psalms 99 The Lord reigneth; let the people tremble: He sitteth between the cherubims; let the earth be moved. The Lord is great in Zion; and He is high above all the people. Let them praise Thy great and terrible name; for it is holy. The king's strength also loveth judgment; Thou dost establish equity, Thou executest judgment and righteousness in Jacob. Exalt ye the Lord our God, and worship at His footstool; for He is holy. Moses and Aaron among His priests, and Samuel among them that call upon

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

His name; they called upon the Lord, and He answered them. He spake unto them in the cloudy pillar: they kept His testimonies, and the ordinance that He gave them. Thou answeredst them, O Lord our God: Thou wast a God that forgavest them, though Thou tookest vengeance of their inventions. Exalt the Lord our God, and worship at His holy hill; for the Lord our God is holy.

4. Psalms 100 Make a joyful noise unto the Lord, all ye lands. Serve the Lord with gladness: come before His presence with singing. Know ye that the Lord He is God: it is He that hath made us, and not we ourselves; we are His people, and the sheep of His pasture. Enter into His gates with thanksgiving, and into His courts with praise: be thankful unto Him, and bless His name. For the Lord is good; His mercy is everlasting; and His truth endureth to all generations.

5. Isaiah 37:16 O Lord of hosts, God of Israel, that dwellest between the cherubims, Thou art the God, even Thou alone, of all the kingdoms of the earth: Thou hast made heaven and earth.

6. Philippians 4:6 Rejoice in the Lord alway: and again I say, Rejoice. Let your moderation be known unto all men. The Lord is at hand. Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication *with thanksgiving* let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.

7. I Thessalonians 5:18 In every thing give thanks: for this is the will of God in Christ Jesus concerning you. [It may not be His perfect or planned will for you, but if you are going through something, He wants to use it to teach you lessons for eternal life.]

8. Revelation 7:11,12 And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour,

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen.

9. Revelation 14:7 Saying with a loud voice, Fear God, and give glory to Him; for the hour of His judgment is come: and worship Him that made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and the fountains of waters.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to keep the Sabbath:

Summary -- The Sabbath is intended by God to be a day to assemble together and spend time in His presence. A time to praise, share and learn. It is also a condition that we should enjoy, whereby we trust and God works.

1. Exodus 20:9-11 Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work: But the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God: *in it thou shalt not do any work*, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates: For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the Sabbath day, and hallowed it.

2. Exodus 31:13 Speak thou also unto the children of Israel, saying, Verily My Sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the Lord that doth sanctify you. Ye shall keep the Sabbath therefore; for it is holy unto you: every one that defileth it shall surely be put to death: for whosoever doeth any work therein, that soul shall be cut off from among his people.

3. Psalms 95:10,11 : Forty years long was I grieved with this generation, and said, It is a people that do err in their heart, and they have not known My ways: Unto whom I swear in My wrath that they should not enter into My rest.

4. Isaiah 58:13 If thou turn away thy foot from the Sabbath, from doing thy pleasure on My holy day; and call the Sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honourable; and shalt honour Him, *not doing thine own ways, nor finding thine own pleasure, nor speaking thine own words:*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. Matthew 12:8-12 For the Son of man is Lord even of the sabbath day. And when He was departed thence, He went into their synagogue: And, behold, there was a man which had his hand withered. And they asked Him, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath days? that they might accuse Him. And He said unto them, What man shall there be among you, that shall have one sheep, and if it fall into a pit on the Sabbath day, will he not lay hold on it, and lift it out? How much then is a man better than a sheep? *Wherefore it is lawful to do well on the Sabbath days.*

6. Mark 2:27,28 And He said unto them, The Sabbath was made for man, and not man for the Sabbath: Therefore the Son of man is Lord also of the Sabbath.

7. Romans 14:5 One man esteemeth one day above another: another esteemeth every day alike. Let every man be fully persuaded in his own mind. He that regardeth the day, regardeth it unto the Lord; and he that regardeth not the day, to the Lord he doth not regard it. . . . [The Amplified Bible makes it clear that Paul is saying that some Christians live for God, therefore everyday is a holy day to them.]

8. Hebrews 4:9-11 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God. For he that is entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from his. Let us labour therefore to enter into that rest, lest any man fall after the same example of unbelief. [He’s talking here about living by faith and being led and empowered by the Holy Spirit.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have an empowered church:

Summary -- Put on the Lord Jesus Christ. Romans 13:14

1. Deuteronomy 8:3 *And He humbled thee, and suffered thee to hunger, and fed thee with manna, which thou knewest not, neither did thy fathers know; that He might make thee know that man doth not live by bread only, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live.*
2. Deuteronomy 10:12 *And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,*
3. Deuteronomy 29:18,19 *Lest there should be among you man, or woman, or family, or tribe, whose heart turneth away this day from the Lord our God, to go and serve the gods of these nations; lest there should be among you a root that beareth gall and wormwood; and it come to pass, when he heareth the words of this curse, that he bless himself in his heart, saying, I shall have peace, though I walk in the imagination of mine heart, to add drunkenness to thirst:*
4. Joshua 23:6-8 *Be ye therefore very courageous to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the law of Moses, that ye turn not aside there from to the right hand or to the left; that ye come not among these nations, these that remain among you; neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them: But cleave unto the Lord your God, as ye have done unto this day.*
5. I Chronicles 22:19 *Now set your heart and your soul to seek*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*the Lord your God; arise therefore, and build ye the sanctuary of the Lord God, to bring the ark of the covenant of the Lord, and the holy vessels of God, into the house that is to be built to the name of the Lord.*

6. Psalms 127:1 *Except the Lord build the house, they labour in vain that build it: except the Lord keep the city, the watchman waketh but in vain.*

7. Romans 13:14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

8. II Corinthians 5:15 And that He died for all, *that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which died for them, and rose again.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to raise your children:

Summary -- Raise them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.

1. Genesis 18:19 *For I know him, that he will command his children and his household after him, and they shall keep the way of the Lord, to do justice and judgment; that the Lord may bring upon Abraham that which he hath spoken of him.*

2. Deuteronomy 4:10 *Specially the day that thou stoodest before the Lord thy God in Horeb, when the Lord said unto me, Gather Me the people together, and I will make them hear My words, that they may learn to fear Me all the days that they shall live upon the earth, and that they may teach their children.*

3. Deuteronomy 6:6-9 *And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart: And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up. And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes. And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates. [I think this makes it clear, we are to diligently teach the ways of God to our children. Even if they don't want to hear it. Even if they are sick of hearing it.]*

4. Deuteronomy 11:18,19 *Therefore shall ye lay up these My words in your heart and in your soul, and bind them for a sign upon your hand, that they may be as frontlets between your eyes. And ye shall teach them your children, speaking of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, when thou liest down, and when thou risest up.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. Deuteronomy 32:46,47 And he said unto them, Set your hearts unto all the words which I testify among you this day, *which ye shall command your children to observe to do, all the words of this law.* For it is not a vain thing for you; because it is your life: and **through this thing ye shall prolong your days in the land, whither ye go over Jordan to possess it.** [I truly believe this is why we do not possess the land as we should.]
6. I Samuel 3:24 For I have told him that I will judge his house for ever for the iniquity which he knoweth; because his sons made themselves vile, and *he restrained them not.*
7. Proverbs 13:24 He that spareth his rod hateth his son: but he that loveth him chasteneth him betimes.
8. Proverbs 19:18 Chasten thy son while there is hope, and let not thy soul spare for his crying.
9. Proverbs 20:30 The blueness of a wound cleanseth away evil: so do stripes the inward parts of the belly.
10. Proverbs 22:6 Train up a child in the way he should go: and when he is old, he will not depart from it.
11. Proverbs 22:15 : Foolishness is bound in the heart of a child; but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him.
12. Proverbs 23:13,14 Withhold not correction from the child: for if thou beatest him with the rod, he shall not die. Thou shalt beat him with the rod, and shalt deliver his soul from hell.
13. Proverbs 29:15,17 The rod and reproof give wisdom: but a child left to himself bringeth his mother to shame. Vs 17 Correct thy son, and he shall give thee rest; yea, he shall give delight unto thy soul.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

14. Galatians 5:22,23 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance: against such there is no law. [I thought this was needed for balance. The Bible is balanced and we can teach in balance. Correct your child diligently, but always exercise the fruit of God’s Spirit in what you do.]

15. Ephesians 6:4 And, ye fathers, provoke not your children to wrath: but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be persuasive:

1. Proverbs 25:15 *By long forbearing* is a prince persuaded, and *a soft tongue* breaketh the bone.
2. I Timothy 5:2 Rebuke not an elder, but intreat him as a father; and the younger men as brethren; the elder women as mothers; the younger as sisters, with all purity.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid losing the promise land:

Summary -- Turn from your ways to God’s ways. Love Him and cleave to Him.

1. Deuteronomy 30:19,20 I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: therefore choose life, that both thou and thy seed may live: *That thou mayest love the Lord thy God, and that thou mayest obey His voice, and that thou mayest cleave unto Him:* for He is thy life, and the length of thy days: that thou mayest dwell in the land which the Lord sware unto thy fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give them.

2. Jeremiah 25:5 They said, *Turn ye again now every one from his evil way, and from the evil of your doings, and dwell in the land that the Lord hath given unto you and to your fathers for ever and ever:*

3. Daniel 8:12 And an host was given him against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practiced, and prospered. [Amplified Bible says those transgressions of God’s people are their abounding irreverence, ungodliness, and lack of piety.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to miss the mark:

1. Isaiah 1:3 The vision of Isaiah the son of Amoz, which he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah. Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth: for the Lord hath spoken, I have nourished and brought up children, and they have rebelled against Me. *The ox knoweth his owner, and the ass his master's crib: but Israel doth not know, My people doth not consider.*
2. Ezekiel 22:26 Her priests have violated My law, and have profaned Mine holy things: *they have put no difference between the holy and profane, neither have they shewed difference between the unclean and the clean, and have hid their eyes from My sabbaths, and I am profaned among them.*
3. Romans 3:10-18 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one: *There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God. They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one. Their throat is an open sepulchre; with their tongues they have used deceit; the poison of asps is under their lips: Whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness: Their feet are swift to shed blood: Destruction and misery are in their ways: And the way of peace have they not known: There is no fear of God before their eyes.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to go into captivity:

Summary -- Don't listen to God.

1. Isaiah 5:13 Therefore My people are gone into captivity, *because they have no knowledge:* and their honourable men are famished, and their multitude dried up with thirst.

2. Jeremiah 5:3-5,11-15,21-23 O Lord, are not Thine eyes upon the truth? *Thou hast stricken them, but they have not grieved; Thou hast consumed them, but they have refused to receive correction: they have made their faces harder than a rock; they have refused to return.* Therefore I said, Surely these are poor; they are foolish: for they know not the way of the Lord, nor the judgment of their God. I will get me unto the great men, and will speak unto them; for they have known the way of the Lord, and the judgment of their God: *but these have altogether broken the yoke, and burst the bonds.* Vs 11 For the house of Israel and the house of Judah have *dealt very treacherously against me, saith the Lord.* 12: They have belied the Lord, and said, It is not He; neither shall evil come upon us; neither shall we see sword nor famine: And the prophets shall become wind, and the word is not in them: thus shall it be done unto them. Wherefore thus saith the Lord God of hosts, Because ye speak this word, behold, I will make My words in thy mouth fire, and this people wood, and it shall devour them. Lo, I will bring a nation upon you from far, O house of Israel, saith the Lord: it is a mighty nation, it is an ancient nation, a nation whose language thou knowest not, neither understandest what they say. Vs21 Hear now this, O foolish people, and without understanding; which have eyes, and see not; which have ears, and hear not: Fear ye not me? saith the Lord: will ye not tremble at My presence, which have placed the sand for the bound of the sea by a perpetual decree, that it cannot pass it:

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

and though the waves thereof toss themselves, yet can they not prevail; though they roar, yet can they not pass over it? *But this people hath a revolting and a rebellious heart; they are revolted and gone.*

3. Jeremiah 13:22,25 And if thou say in thine heart, Wherefore come these things upon me? *For the greatness of thine iniquity are thy skirts discovered, and thy heels made bare. Vs 25: This is thy lot, the portion of thy measures from Me, saith the Lord; because thou hast forgotten Me, and trusted in falsehood.*

4. Lamentations 2:14 *Thy prophets have seen vain and foolish things for thee: and they have not discovered thine iniquity, to turn away thy captivity; but have seen for thee false burdens and causes of banishment.*

5. Daniel 8:12 *And an host was given him against the daily sacrifice by reason of transgression, and it cast down the truth to the ground; and it practiced, and prospered.*

6. James 1:14 But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to stumble and fall:

Summary -- Don't listen to God.

1. Genesis 3:17 And unto Adam He said, because thou hast hearkened unto the voice of thy wife, and hast eaten of the tree of which I commanded thee, saying, thou shalt not eat of it: cursed is the ground for thy sake; in sorrow shalt thou eat of it all the days of thy life;
2. Genesis 4:3,4,7 And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto the Lord. And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering. [Abel brought of his best. Cain sacrificed half-heartedly, just in case he'd get in trouble if he didn't.] Vs 7 If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? And if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door, and unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him. [To stumble and fall, don't rule over sin.]
3. Numbers 14:43 For the Amalekites and the Canaanites are there before you, and ye shall fall by the sword: *because ye are turned away from the Lord, therefore the Lord will not be with you.*
4. Deuteronomy 28:58-68 If thou wilt not observe to do all the words of this law that are written in this book, that thou mayest fear this glorious and fearful name, the Lord thy God; then the Lord will make thy plagues wonderful, and the plagues of thy seed, even great plagues, and of long continuance and sore sicknesses, and of long continuance. [. . .be few in number. . . live in fear. . .taken captive. . .]
5. Deuteronomy 29:25 Then men shall say, because they have

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

forsaken the covenant of the Lord God of their fathers, which He made with them when He brought them forth out of the land of Egypt: for they went and served other gods, and worshipped them, . . . and the anger of the Lord was kindled against this land, to bring upon it all the curses. . . [The covenant Christians have with God is to trust and obey Him, i. e., receive Him as their Father.]

6. Joshua 24:20 If ye forsake the Lord, and serve strange gods, then He will turn and do you hurt, and consume you, After He hath done you good.

7. Judges 2:10-12 And also all that generation were gathered unto their fathers: and there arose another generation after them, which knew not the Lord, nor yet the works which He had done for Israel. And the children of Israel did evil in the sight of the Lord, and served Baalim: and they forsook the Lord God of their fathers, which brought them out of the land of Egypt, and . . . Provoked the Lord to anger.

8. I Kings 9:6,7 But if ye shall at all turn from following Me, ye or your children, and will not keep My commandments and My statutes which I have set before you, but go and serve other gods, and worship them: then will I cut off Israel out of the land which I have given them; . . .

9. I Kings 11:1,2,6 But Solomon loved many strange women together with the daughter of Pharaoh, women of the Moabites . . . Which the Lord said unto the children of Israel, ye shall not go in to them, neither shall they come in unto you: for surely they will turn away your heart after their gods: Solomon clave unto these in love. Vs 6 And Solomon did evil in the sight of the Lord, and went not fully after the Lord, as did David his father.

10. I Kings 13:17-24 For it was said to me by the word of the Lord, thou shalt eat no bread nor drink water there, nor turn again to go by the way that thou camest. He said unto him, I am a prophet also as thou are; and an angel spake unto me by the word

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

of the Lord, saying, bring him back with thee into thine house, that he may eat bread and drink water. But he lied unto him. So he went back with him, and did eat bread in his house, and drink water. And it came to pass, as they sat at the table, that the word of the Lord came unto the prophet that brought him back: and he cried unto the man of God that came from Judah, saying, thus saith the Lord, forasmuch as thou hast disobeyed the mouth of the Lord, and hast not kept the commandments which the Lord thy God commanded thee, but camest back, and hast eaten bread and drunk water in the place, of the which the Lord did say to thee, eat no bread, and drink no water; thy carcass shall not come unto the sepulcher of thy fathers. And it came to pass after he had eaten bread, and after he had drunk, that he saddled for him the ass, to wit, for the prophet whom he had brought back. And when he was gone, as lion met him by the way, and slew him: and his carcass was cast in the way, and the ass stood by it, the lion also stood by the carcass.

11. II Chronicles 15:2 And he went out to meet Asa, and said unto him, hear ye me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin; the Lord is with you, while ye be with Him; and if ye seek Him, He will be found of you; but if ye forsake Him, He will forsake you.

12. Psalms 1:1 Blessed is the man that walketh no in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in His law doth he meditate day and night. [so those who do these unwise things are in a position to fall.]

13. Psalms 50:16,17 But unto the wicked God saith, what hast thou to do to declare My statues, or that thou shouldest take My covenant in thy mouth? *Seeing thou hatest instruction, and castest My words behind thee.*

14. Psalms 78:10,11,22,32,33,37 *They kept not the covenant of God, and refused to walk in His law; and forgot His works, and His wonders that He had showed them. Vs 22 Because they believed*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*not in God, and trusted not in His salvation:* Vs 32 For all this they sinned still, and believed not for His wondrous works. Therefore their days did He consume in vanity, and their years in trouble. Vs 37 *For their heart was not right with Him, neither were they steadfast in His covenant.*

15. Proverbs 10:8 The wise in heart will receive commandments: but a prating fool shall fall.

16. Proverbs 13:13 Whoso despiseth the word shall be destroyed: but he that feareth the commandment shall be rewarded.

17. Proverbs 24:33,34 Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep: so shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth; and thy want as an armed man.

18. Proverbs 18:14 Happy is the man that feareth always: *but he that hardened his heart shall fall into mischief.*

19. Isaiah 30:15-17 for thus saith the Lord God, the holy one of Israel; in returning and rest shall ye be saved; in quietness and in confidence shall be your strength: and ye would not. But ye said, no; for we will flee upon horses; therefore shall ye flee: and, we will ride upon the swift; therefore shall they that pursue you be swift. One thousand shall flee at the rebuke of one; at the rebuke of five shall ye flee: till ye be left as a beacon upon the top of a mountain . . .

20. Jeremiah 6:10,11,13,15 To whom shall I speak, and give warning, that they may hear? Behold, their ear is uncircumcised, and they cannot hearken: behold, the word of the Lord is unto them a reproach; they have no delight in it. Therefore I am full of fury of the Lord; . . . And their houses shall be turned unto others, with their fields and wives together; . . . Vs 13 From the least of them even unto the greatest of them every one is given to covetousness; from the prophet even unto the priest every one



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

dealeth falsely. Vs 15 Were thy ashamed . . . Nay, they were not ashamed . . . Therefore they shall fall . . .

21. Matthew 16:23 But he turned, and said unto Peter, get thee behind Me, satan: thou are an offence unto Me: *for thou savourest not the things that be of God, but those that be of men.*

22. I Peter 2:8 And a stone of stumbling and a rock of offence. Even to them which stumble at the word, being disobedient: . . .

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be under a curse:

Summary -- Don't listen to God.

1. Deuteronomy 27:15-26 ‘The curses’ [For Christians the curses can only land on those who habitually walk by the flesh and not by the Spirit. Proverbs 26:2, Romans 8:1-8]
2. Deuteronomy 28:15-47 But it shall come to pass, if thou wilt not hearken unto the voice of the Lord thy God, to observe to do all His commandments and His statutes which I command thee this day; that all these curses shall come upon thee, and overtake thee: . . . .
3. Proverbs 3:27-33 Withhold not good from them to whom it is due, when it is in the power of thine hand to do it. Say not unto thy neighbor, go, and come again, and to morrow I will give; when thou hast it by thee. Devise not evil against thy neighbour, seeing he dwelleth securely by thee. Strive not with a man without cause, if he have done thee no harm. Envy thou not the oppressor, and choose none of his ways. For the forward is abomination to the Lord: but His secret is with the righteous. The curse of the Lord is in the house of the wicked: but He blesseth the habitation of the just.
4. Isaiah 43:27,28 Thy first father hath sinned, and thy teachers have transgressed against Me. Therefore I have profaned the princes of the sanctuary, and have given Jacob to the curse, and Israel to reproaches.
5. Jeremiah 48:10 Cursed be he that doeth the work of the Lord deceitfully, and cursed be he that keepeth back his sword from blood. [a coward]

# The Ultimate “How To” Book

## How to be wicked:

Summary -- Walk in your own ways instead of the Lord's.

1. Proverbs 2:10-13 When wisdom entereth into thine heart, and knowledge is pleasant unto thy soul; discretion shall preserve thee, understanding shall keep thee: to deliver thee from the way of the evil man, from the man that speaketh forward things; who leave the paths of uprightness, to walk in the ways of darkness; . .

2. Proverbs 6:12-14 A naughty person, a wicked man, walketh with a forward mouth. He winketh with his eyes, he speaketh with his feet, he teaches with his fingers; frowardness is in his heart, he deviseth mischief continually; he soweth discord.

3. Proverbs 6:16-19 These six things doth the Lord hate: yea, seven are an abomination unto Him: a proud look, a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood, an heart that deviseth wicked imaginations, feet that be swift in running to mischief, a false witness that speaketh lies, and he that soweth discord among brethren.

4. Romans 1:29-32 Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whisperers, backbiters, haters of God, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, without understanding, covenant breakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful: who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. Romans 2:5 But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God; who will render to every man According to his deeds; to them who by patient continuance in well doing seek for glory and honour and immortality, eternal life: *but unto them that are contentious, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath, tribulation and anguish, upon every soul of man that doeth evil, [harm] of the Jew first and also of the Gentile.*

6. Romans 6:16 Know ye not, that *to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness?*

7. Romans 8:13 *For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live.*

8. Galatians 5:19-21 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envying, murders, drunckeness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in the past, *that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be a fool:

Summary -- Don't listen to wisdom. Think you can make your own rules.

1. Proverbs 1:7 The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge: *but fools despise wisdom and instruction.*
2. Proverbs 14:9 Fools make a mock at sin: but among the righteous there is favour.
3. Proverbs 15:5 A fool *despiseth his father's instruction.* but he that regarded reproof is prudent.
4. Proverbs 28:26 *He that trusteth in his own heart is a fool:* but whoso walketh wisely, he shal be delivered.
5. Proverbs 29:11 *A fool uttered all his mind.* but a wise man keepeth it in till afterwards.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have a drought:

Summary -- Be rebellious or a hypocrite.

1. Isaiah 32:6 For the vile person will speak villany, and his heart will work iniquity, *to practice hypocrisy, and to utter error against the Lord*, to make empty the soul of the hungry, and he will cause the drink of the thirsty to fail.

2. Jeremiah 9:12,13 Who is the wise man, that may understand this? and who is he to whom the mouth of the Lord hath spoken, that he may declare it, for what the land perisheth and is burned up like a wilderness, that none passeth through? And the Lord saith, *Because they have forsaken My law which I set before them, and have not obeyed My voice, neither walked therein;*

3. Hosea 4:1-3 Hear the word of the Lord, ye children of Israel: for the Lord hath a controversy with the inhabitants of the land, *because there is no truth, nor mercy, nor knowledge of God in the land.* By swearing, and lying, and killing, and stealing, and committing adultery, they break out, and blood toucheth blood. Therefore shall the land mourn, and every one that dwelleth therein shall languish, with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven; yea, the fishes of the sea also shall be taken away.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to attain poverty:

Summary -- Be undisciplined or lazy.

1. Proverbs 6:10,11 *Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep:* So shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth, and thy want as an armed man.
2. Proverbs 13:11 *Wealth gotten by vanity shall be diminished.* but he that gathereth by labour shall increase.
3. Proverbs 19:15 Slothfulness casteth into a *deep sleep; and an idle soul* shall suffer hunger.
4. Proverbs 20:21 : An inheritance may *be gotten hastily* at the beginning; but the end thereof shall not be blessed.
5. Proverbs 21:5,13,20 The thoughts of the diligent tend only to plenteousness; but of every one that is hasty only to want. Vs 13 Whoso stoppeth his ears at the cry of the poor, he also shall cry himself, but shall not be heard. Vs 20 There is treasure to be desired and oil in the dwelling of the wise; but a foolish man *spendeth it up.*
6. Proverbs 23:21 *For the drunkard and the glutton shall come to poverty.* and *drowsiness* shall clothe a man with rags.
7. Proverbs 24:30-34 I went by the field of the slothful, and by the vineyard of the man void of understanding; and, lo, it was all grown over with thorns, and nettles had covered the face thereof, and the stone wall thereof was broken down. Then I saw, and considered it well: I looked upon it, and received instruction. *Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep:* So

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

shall thy poverty come as one that travelleth; and thy want as an armed man.

8. Proverbs 28:19,27 He that tilleth his land shall have plenty of bread: but he that *followeth after vain persons* shall have poverty enough. Vs 27 He that giveth unto the poor shall not lack: but *he that hideth his eyes shall have many a curse.*



# The Ultimate “How To” Book

## New Testament

### How to be saved:

Summary -- Receive Jesus Christ as your **Lord** and **Savior**.

1. Mark 16:15,16 And He said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. *He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved*, but he that believeth not shall be damned. [Amplified Version says believe mean to adhere to and trust in and rely on.]

2. John 3:16-18 For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. *He that believeth [adheres to, trust in and relies] on Him is not condemned*: but He that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

3. Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that *whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved*. {Amplified Version says call on name of the Lord means invoke, adore and worship}

4. Acts 2:38-40 Then Peter said unto them, *Repent, and be baptized* every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call. And with many other words did he testify and exhort, saying, Save yourselves from this untoward generation.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. Acts 16:30,31 And brought them out, and said, Sirs, what must I do to be saved? And they said, *Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and thou shalt be saved, and thy house.*

6. Romans 8:9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. *Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of His.*

7. Romans 10:9-13 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. *For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.* For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on Him shall not be ashamed. For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him. For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.

8. I Corinthians 15:1,2 Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand; *by which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.*

9. Titus 3:4,5 *But after that the kindness and love of God our Saviour toward man appeared, not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to His mercy He saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;*

10. James 1:21,22 : Wherefore lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness, and *receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your souls.* But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be justified:

1. Romans 4:23-5:1 Now it was not written for his sake alone, [Abraham’s] that it was imputed to him; but for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, *if we believe on Him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead; who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification.* Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:
2. Galatians 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, *even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.*
3. Galatians 3:11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, The just shall live by faith.

## The Ultimate "How To" Book

### How to enter the kingdom of God/heaven:

Summary -- Become a true child of God.

1. Matthew 4:17 : From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.
2. Matthew 5:3,10 : Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. Vs 10 Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness' sake: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
3. Matthew 18:3,4 And said, Verily I say unto you, Except ye be converted, and become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven. Whosoever therefore shall humble himself as this little child, the same is greatest in the kingdom of heaven.
4. Luke 10:27,28 And he answering said, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and thy neighbour as thyself. And He said unto him, Thou hast answered right: this do, and thou shalt live. [Amplified Version said, this do, and thou shalt live-enjoy active, blessed, endless life in the kingdom of God.]
5. Luke 18:22-25 Now when Jesus heard these things, He said unto him, Yet lackest thou one thing: sell all that thou hast, and distribute unto the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven: and come, follow Me. And when he heard this, he was very sorrowful: for he was very rich. And when Jesus saw that he was very sorrowful, he said, How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of God! For it is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

6. John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

7. Colossians 1:12-14 Giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light: Who hath delivered us from the power of darkness, and hath translated us into the kingdom of His dear Son: In whom we have redemption through his blood, even the forgiveness of sins.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have eternal life:

Summary -- Receive the Father and the Son.

1. John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life.
2. John 3:36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.
3. John 17:2-4 As Thou hast given Him power over all flesh, that He should give eternal life to as many as Thou hast given Him. And this is life eternal, that they might know Thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent. I have glorified Thee on the earth: I have finished the work which Thou gavest Me to do.
4. II Timothy 2:11 It is a faithful saying: For if we be dead with Him, we shall also live with Him:
5. I John 2:17 And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.
6. I John 5:12,13 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life. These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have a firm foundation:

1. Matthew 7:24-27 Therefore *whosoever heareth these sayings of Mine, and doeth them*, I will liken him unto a wise man, which built his house upon a rock: And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock. And every one that heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them not, shall be likened unto a foolish man, which built his house upon the sand: And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell: and great was the fall of it.

2. I Corinthians 6:10-13 According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. *For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.* Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is.

3. Ephesians 2:20,21 : And are built upon the *foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; in whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord.* In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to walk by faith:

Summary -- True faith involves a close personal relationship with the Father and the Son.

1. II Corinthians 4:16-5:1 For which cause we faint not; but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day. For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory; *while we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.* For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.

2. II Corinthians 5:5-7 Now He that hath wrought us for the selfsame thing is God, who also hath given unto us the earnest of the Spirit. Therefore we are always confident, knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord: *(For we walk by faith, not by sight:)*

3. Galatians 3:9-11 : So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham. For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continueth not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them. But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God, it is evident: for, *The just shall live by faith.*

4. Galatians 5:5,6 For we *through the Spirit* wait for the hope of righteousness by faith. For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor uncircumcision; *but faith which worketh by love.* [You need to love God and practice the love of God in order



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*to develop strong faith.]*

5. I Thessalonians 1:6-8 *And ye became followers of us, and of the Lord, having received the word in much affliction, with joy of the Holy Ghost: So that ye were ensamples to all that believe in Macedonia and Achaia. For from you sounded out the word of the Lord not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but also in every place your faith to God-ward is spread abroad; so that we need not to speak any thing.*

6. II Thessalonians 1:4,11 *So that we ourselves glory in you in the churches of God for your patience and faith in all your persecutions and tribulations that ye endure: Vs 11 Wherefore also we pray always for you, that our God would count you worthy of this calling, and fulfill all the good pleasure of His goodness, and the work of faith with power:*

7. I Timothy 6:12 *Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, whereunto thou art also called, and hast professed a good profession before many witnesses.*

8. Hebrews 6:15 *For when God made promise to Abraham, because He could swear by no greater, He sware by Himself, saying, Surely blessing I will bless thee, and multiplying I will multiply thee. And so, after he had patiently endured, he obtained the promise.*

9. Hebrews 11:1 *Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.*

10. James 2:18-20 *Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith, and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works. Thou believest that there is one God; thou doest well: the devils also believe, and tremble. But wilt thou know, O vain man, that faith without works is dead?*

## How to sow and reap or how to bear good fruit:

Summary -- Prepare the ground, plant according to instructions, feed and water crops, keep the weeds and thorns out, when God gives the increase, put in the sickle.

1. Numbers 33:51-55 Speak unto the children of Israel, and say unto them, When ye are passed over Jordan into the land of Canaan; then ye shall drive out all the inhabitants of the land from before you, and destroy all their pictures, and destroy all their molten images, and quite pluck down all their high places: And ye shall dispossess the inhabitants of the land, and dwell therein: for I have given you the land to possess it. And ye shall divide the land by lot for an inheritance among your families: and to the more ye shall give the more inheritance, and to the fewer ye shall give the less inheritance: every man's inheritance shall be in the place where his lot falleth; according to the tribes of your fathers ye shall inherit. *But if ye will not drive out the inhabitants of the land from before you,* then it shall come to pass, that those which ye let remain of them shall be pricks in your eyes, and *thorns* in your sides, and shall vex you in the land wherein ye dwell. [According to the parable of the sower, thorns are the cares of this world. So the first thing we must do to successfully sow and reap is the above. Clear the land right.]

2. Judges 2:2,3 And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars: but ye have not obeyed My voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as *thorns* in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you. [To sow spiritual life, you must tear down all the altars to false

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

gods in your heart.]

3. Psalms 1:1-3 Blessed is the man that *walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and night.* And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.

4. Proverbs 22:8 He that soweth iniquity shall reap vanity: . . .

5. Proverbs 24:30-34 I went by the field of the slothful, and by the vineyard of the man void of understanding; and, lo, *it was all grown over with thorns, and nettles had covered the face thereof, and the stone wall thereof was broken down.* Then I saw, and considered it well: I looked upon it, and received instruction. Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep: So shall thy [spiritual] poverty come as one that travelleth; and thy want as an armed man.

6. Ecclesiastes 11:4,6 He that observeth the wind shall not sow; and he that regardeth the clouds shall not reap. [Keep your eyes on Jesus and not on things that cause defeat.] Vs 6 *In the morning sow thy seed, and in the evening withhold not thine hand: for thou knowest not whether shall prosper, either this or that, or whether they both shall be alike good.* [Sow continually, not just now and then.]

7. Isaiah 28:23-29 : Give ye ear, and hear my voice; hearken, and hear my speech. *Doth the plowman plow all day to sow? doth he open and break the clods of his ground?* When he hath made plain the face thereof, doth he not cast abroad the fitches, and scatter the cummin, and cast in the principal wheat and the appointed barley and rie in their place? For his God doth instruct him to discretion, and doth teach him. For the fitches are not threshed with a threshing instrument, neither is a cart wheel

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

turned about upon the cummin; but the fitches are beaten out with a staff, and the cummin with a rod. Bread corn is bruised; because he will not ever be threshing it, nor break it with the wheel of his cart, nor bruise it with his horsemen. This also cometh forth from the Lord of hosts, which is wonderful in counsel, and excellent in working. [Not all seeds are sown the same way. Sow as the Bible teaches. But the ground must always be purged and worked to reap a good harvest.]

8. Jeremiah 4:3 For thus saith the Lord to the men of Judah and Jerusalem, *Break up your fallow ground, and sow not among thorns.*

9. Jeremiah 12:13 *They have sown wheat, but shall reap thorns:* they have put themselves to pain, but shall not profit: and they shall be ashamed of your revenues because of the fierce anger of the Lord. [Make sure you are in right standing with God or your crops will be perverted.]

10. Hosea 10:12,13 Sow to yourselves in righteousness, reap in mercy; break up your fallow ground: for it is time to seek the Lord, till He come and rain righteousness upon you. Ye have plowed wickedness, ye have reaped iniquity; ye have eaten the fruit of lies: *because thou didst trust in thy way, in the multitude of thy mighty men.*

11. Matthew 3:2,8 And saying, *Repent* ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand. Vs 8 Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance:

12. Matthew 7:18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit.

13. Matthew 21:19 And when He saw a fig tree in the way, He came to it, and found nothing thereon, but leaves only, and said unto it, Let no fruit grow on thee henceforward for ever. And presently the fig tree withered away. [This verse shows that if

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

something does not bear fruit, it dies. So in how to sow and reap, if you do not get a crop, do something about it. Fruit is the natural result of good gardening.]

14. Mark 4:14-29 : The sower soweth the word. And these are they *by the way side*, where the word is sown; but when they have heard, Satan cometh immediately, and taketh away the word that was sown in their hearts. And these are they likewise which are sown *on stony ground*; who, when they have heard the word, immediately receive it with gladness; and have no root in themselves, and so endure but for a time: afterward, when affliction or persecution ariseth for the word's sake, immediately they are offended. And these are they which are sown *among thorns*; such as hear the word, and the cares of this world, and the deceitfulness of riches, and the lusts of other things entering in, choke the word, and it becometh unfruitful. And these are they which *are sown on good ground*; such as hear the word, and receive it, and bring forth fruit, some thirtyfold, some sixty, and some an hundred. Vs 29 And these are they which are sown on good ground; such as *hear the word, and receive it*, and bring forth fruit, some thirtyfold, some sixty, and some an hundred. And he said unto them, Is a candle brought to be put under a bushel, or under a bed? and not to be set on a candlestick? For there is nothing hid, which shall not be manifested; neither was any thing kept secret, but that it should come abroad. If any man have ears to hear, let him hear. And he said unto them, *Take heed what ye hear: with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you*: and unto you that hear shall more be given. For he that hath, to him shall be given: and he that hath not, from him shall be taken even that which he hath. And he said, So is the kingdom of God, as if a man should cast seed into the ground; and should sleep, and rise night and day, and the seed should spring and grow up, he knoweth not how. For the earth bringeth forth fruit of herself; first the blade, then the ear, after that the full corn in the ear. But when the fruit is brought forth, *immediately he putteth in the sickle*, because the harvest is come.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

15. Luke 8:15 But that on the good ground are they, *which in an honest and good heart, having heard the word, keep it, and bring forth fruit with patience.*

16. Luke 13:6-9 He spake also this parable; A certain man had a fig tree planted in his vineyard; and he came and sought fruit thereon, and found none. Then said he unto the dresser of his vineyard, Behold, these three years I come seeking fruit on this fig tree, and find none: cut it down; why cumbereth it the ground? And he answering said unto him, Lord, let it alone this year also, *till I shall dig about it, and dung it: And if it bear fruit, well: and if not, then after that thou shalt cut it down.* [Make sure you are getting all the proper nutrients from the Bible.]

17. John 15:1-8 I am the true vine, and My Father is the husbandman. Every branch in Me that beareth not fruit He taketh away: and *every branch that beareth fruit, He purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit.* Now ye are clean through the word which I have spoken unto you. Abide in Me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in Me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: *He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without Me ye can do nothing.* If a man abide not in Me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned. If ye abide in Me, and My words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you. Herein is My Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be My disciples.

18. Galatians 6:7,8 Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for *whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap.* For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting.

19. Philippians 2:12 Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out [Amplified Version says *cultivate*, carry out to

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

the goal and fully complete] your own salvation with fear and trembling.

20. Hebrews 6:7,8 For the earth which *drinketh in the rain* that cometh *oft* upon it, and *bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is dressed*, receiveth blessing from God: But that which *beareth thorns and briers is rejected*, and is nigh unto cursing; whose end is to be burned. [Thorns- cares of this world, deceitfulness of riches and lust for other things. Mark 4:19]

21. Hebrews 12:11 Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward *it yieldeth the peaceable fruit* of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby. [Some parts of cultivating are painful, but absolutely necessary. We want the fruit.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be filled with the fullness of God:

Ephesians 3:16-18 That He would grant you, according to the riches of His glory, *to be strengthened with might by His Spirit in the inner man; that Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that ye, being rooted and grounded in love, may be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; and to know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that ye might be filled with all the fulness of God.* Now unto Him that is able to do exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think, according to the power that worketh in us,



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain a great reward:

Summary -- Be diligent to serve and witness for the Lord, even in the face of opposition.

1. Matthew 5:11,12 Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for My sake. Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.

2. Matthew 16:27 For the Son of man shall come in the glory of his Father with His angels; and then He shall reward every man according to his works. Luke 6:35 But love ye your enemies, and do good, and lend, hoping for nothing again; and your reward shall be great, and ye shall be the children of the Highest: for He is kind unto the unthankful and to the evil.

3. II John 8 Look to yourselves, that we lose not those things which we have wrought, but that we receive a full reward.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be first:

Summary -- Minister to and serve others.

1. Mark 9:35 And He sat down, and called the twelve, and saith unto them, If any man desire to be first, the same shall be last of all, and servant of all.

2. Mark 10:42-45 But Jesus called them to him, and saith unto them, Ye know that they which are accounted to rule over the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and their great ones exercise authority upon them. But so shall it not be among you: but whosoever will be great among you, shall be your minister: And whosoever of you will be the chiefest, shall be servant of all. For even the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to secure a position of authority in God's kingdom:

1. Luke 7:7-9 Wherefore neither thought I myself worthy to come unto thee: but say in a word, and my servant shall be healed. *For I also am a man set under authority*, having under me soldiers, and I say unto one, Go, and he goeth; and to another, Come, and he cometh; and to my servant, Do this, and he doeth it. When Jesus heard these things, He marvelled at him, and turned Him about, and said unto the people that followed Him, I say unto you, *I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel.*
2. Luke 19:17 And He said unto him, Well, thou good servant: *because thou hast been faithful in a very little*, have thou authority over ten cities.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to become a child of God:

Summary -- Receive God's Spirit and be led by It.

1. John 1:12,13 : But as many as received Him, to them gave He power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on His name: *Which were born*, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but *of God*.

2. John 3:3-6 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, *Except a man be born again*, he cannot see the kingdom of God. Nicodemus saith unto Him, How can a man be born when he is old? can he enter the second time into his mother's womb, and be born? Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. *That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.*

3. Acts 2:38,39 Then Peter said unto them, *Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins*, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost. For the promise is unto you, and to your children, and to all that are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God shall call.

4. Romans 8:14 For as many as are *led by the Spirit of God*, they are the sons of God.

5. II Corinthians 6:17-7:1 *Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate*, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you, and will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be My sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty. Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, *let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*holiness in the fear of God.*

6. I Peter 1:23 : *Being born again*, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the word of God, which liveth and abideth for ever.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be like your heavenly Father/how to love:

Summary -- You must love God with all your heart and your neighbor as yourself.

1. Matthew 5:38-48 Ye have heard that it hath been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth: But I say unto you, That ye resist not evil: *but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also. And if any man will sue thee at the law, and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloke also. And whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain. Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn not thou away. Ye have heard that it hath been said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy. But I say unto you, Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you; that ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven:* for He maketh His sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. For if ye love them which love you, what reward have ye? do not even the publicans the same? And if ye salute your brethren only, what do ye more than others? do not even the publicans so? Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.

2. Mark 8:34-36 And when He had called the people unto Him with His disciples also, He said unto them, Whosoever will come after Me, let him deny himself, [The Amplified Version says - forget, ignore, disown, lose sight of himself and his own interests.] and *take up his cross, and follow Me.* For whosoever will save his life shall lose it; but whosoever shall lose his life for My sake and

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

the gospel's, the same shall save it.

3. Luke 3:10-14 And the people asked him, saying, What shall we do then? He answereth and saith unto them, *He that hath two coats, let him impart to him that hath none; and he that hath meat, let him do likewise.* Then came also publicans to be baptized, and said unto him, Master, what shall we do? And he said unto them, *Exact no more than that which is appointed you.* And the soldiers likewise demanded of him, saying, And what shall we do? And he said unto them, *Do violence to no man, neither accuse any falsely; and be content with your wages.*

4. Luke 6:27-36 *But I say unto you which hear, Love your enemies, do good to them which hate you, bless them that curse you, and pray for them which despitefully use you. And unto him that smiteth thee on the one cheek offer also the other; and him that taketh away thy cloke forbid not to take thy coat also. Give to every man that asketh of thee; and of him that taketh away thy goods ask in. And as ye would that men should do to you, do ye also to them likewise.* For if ye love them which love you, what thank have ye? for sinners also love those that love them. And if ye do good to them which do good to you, what thank have ye? for sinners also do even the same. And if ye lend to them of whom ye hope to receive, what thank have ye? for sinners also lend to sinners, to receive as much again. But love ye your enemies, and do good, and lend, hoping for nothing again; and your reward shall be great, and ye shall be the children of the Highest: for He is kind unto the unthankful and to the evil.

5. John 15:12,13 This is My commandment, *That ye love one another,* as I have loved you. Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.

6. Romans 12:5-16 So we, being many, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of another. Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given to us, whether prophecy, let us prophesy according to the proportion of faith; or

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

ministry, let us wait on our ministering: or he that teacheth, on teaching; Or he that exhorteth, on exhortation: he that giveth, let him do it with simplicity; he that ruleth, with diligence; he that sheweth mercy, with cheerfulness. Let love be without dissimulation. Abhor that which is evil; cleave to that which is good. Be kindly affectioned one to another with brotherly love; in honour preferring one another; not slothful in business; fervent in spirit; serving the Lord; rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer; distributing to the necessity of saints; given to hospitality. Bless them which persecute you: bless, and curse not. Rejoice with them that do rejoice, and weep with them that weep. Be of the same mind one toward another. Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate. Be not wise in your own conceits.

7. Romans 14:13 : Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, *that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in his brother's way.*

8. Romans 15:2-7 *Let every one of us please his neighbour for his good to edification.* For even Christ pleased not himself; but, as it is written, The reproaches of them that reproached thee fell on me. For whatsoever things were written aforetime were written for our learning, that we through patience and comfort of the scriptures might have hope. Now the God of patience and consolation grant you to be likeminded one toward another according to Christ Jesus: That ye may with one mind and one mouth glorify God, even the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. Wherefore receive ye one another, as Christ also received us to the glory of God.

9. I Corinthians 8:12,13 But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ. Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend.

10. I Corinthians 10:24 *Let no man seek his own, but every man*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*another's wealth.*

11. I Corinthians 13:4-8 Charity suffereth long, and is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. Charity never faileth: . . .

12. Philippians 2:2-9 Fulfil ye my joy, that ye be likeminded, having the same love, being of one accord, of one mind. *Let nothing be done through strife or vainglory; but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves. Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others.* Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: But made Himself of no reputation, and took upon Him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: And being found in fashion as a man, He humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross. Wherefore God also hath highly exalted Him, and given Him a name which is above every name:

13. Colossians 3:13-23 *Forbearing one another, and forgiving one another*, if any man have a quarrel against any: even as Christ forgave you, so also do ye. And above all these things *put on charity*, which is the bond of perfectness. And let the peace of God rule in your hearts, to the which also ye are called in one body; and be ye thankful. Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord. *And whatsoever ye do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by Him. Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands*, as it is fit in the Lord. *Husbands, love your wives*, and be not bitter against them. *Children, obey your parents* in all things: for this is well pleasing unto the Lord. Fathers, provoke not your children to

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

anger, lest they be discouraged. Servants, obey in all things your masters according to the flesh; not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but in singleness of heart, fearing God: And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men;

14. II Thessalonians 3:14 And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed.

15. I John 5:2,3 By this we know that we love the children of God, when we love God, and keep His commandments. For this is the love of God, that we keep His commandments: and his commandments are not grievous.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to know who your Father is:

1. John 8:38-47 I speak that which I have seen with my Father: and ye do that which ye have seen with your father. They answered and said unto him, Abraham is our father. Jesus saith unto them, If ye were Abraham's children, ye would do the works of Abraham. But now ye seek to kill Me, a man that hath told you the truth, which I have heard of God: this did not Abraham. *Ye do the deeds of your father.* Then said they to him, We be not born of fornication; we have one Father, even God. Jesus said unto them, *If God were your Father, ye would love Me:* for I proceeded forth and came from God; neither came I of Myself, but He sent Me. Why do ye not understand My speech? even because ye cannot hear My word. *Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do.* He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it. And because I tell you the truth, ye believe Me not. Which of you convinceth Me of sin? And if I say the truth, why do ye not believe Me? He that is of God heareth God's words: ye therefore hear them not, because ye are not of God.

2. Romans 8:14-16 *For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.* For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

3. I John 2:29 *If ye know that He is righteous, ye know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of Him.*

4. I John 3:9,10 *Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for His seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

born of God. In this the children of God are manifest, and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.

5. I John 5:18 *We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not*, but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to see the Father:

1. Matthew 5:8 Blessed are the *pure in heart*. for they shall see God.
2. John 14:9 Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known Me, Philip? *he that hath seen Me hath seen the Father*, and how sayest thou then, Shew us the Father?
3. John 14:21 *He that hath My commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth Me: and he that loveth Me shall be loved of My Father, and I will love him, and will manifest Myself to him.*

## How to have a close relationship with the Father:

Summary -- Love Him and be led by His Spirit.

1. John 15:9,10 *As the Father hath loved Me, so have I loved you: continue ye in My love. If ye keep My commandments, ye shall abide in My love; even as I have kept My Father's commandments, and abide in His love.*
2. John 16:27 For the Father Himself loveth you, because ye have loved Me, and have believed that I came out from God.
3. John 17:26 And I have declared unto them Thy name, and will declare it: that the love wherewith thou hast loved Me may be in them, and I in them.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to receive the Spirit of truth:

John 14:16-19 *If ye love Me, keep My commandments. And I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, that He may abide with you for ever; even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth Him not, neither knoweth Him: but ye know Him; for He dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you. Yet a little while, and the world seeth me no more; but ye see me: because I live, ye shall live also.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be Jesus’ disciple:

Summary -- You must forsake all and follow Jesus.

1. Matthew 10 25-28 *It is enough for the disciple that he be as his master, and the servant as his lord. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more shall they call them of his household? Fear them not therefore: for there is nothing covered, that shall not be revealed; and hid, that shall not be known. What I tell you in darkness, that speak ye in light: and what ye hear in the ear, that preach ye upon the housetops. And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.*

2. Matthew 16:24-26 *Then said Jesus unto His disciples, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me. For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: and whosoever will lose his life for my sake shall find it. For what is a man profited, if he shall gain the whole world, and lose his own soul? or what shall a man give in exchange for his soul?*

3. Luke 6:40 *The disciple is not above his master: but every one that is perfect shall be as his master.*

4. Luke 9:23,24 *And He said to them all, If any man will come after Me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross daily, and follow Me. For whosoever will save his life shall lose it: but whosoever will lose his life for My sake, the same shall save it.*

5. Luke 14:26,27,33 *If any man come to Me, and hate not his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brethren, and sisters, yea, and his own life also, he cannot be My disciple. And*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*whosoever doth not bear his cross, and come after me, cannot be My disciple. Vs 33 So likewise, whosoever he be of you that forsaketh not all that he hath, he cannot be My disciple.*

6. John 8:31,32 Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on Him, *If ye continue in My word, then are ye My disciples indeed;* and ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.

7. II Corinthians 5:14,15 For the love of Christ constraineth us; because we thus judge, that if one died for all, then were all dead: And that He died for all, that they which live *should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto Him which died for them, and rose again.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to abide in the vine:

Summary -- Understand how vital it is for you to do so. Cleave to Him.

1. John 15:5-10 : I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without Me ye can do nothing. If a man abide not in Me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned. If ye abide in Me, and My words abide in you, ye shall ask what ye will, and it shall be done unto you. Herein is My Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be My disciples. As the Father hath loved Me, so have I loved you: continue ye in My love. *If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father's commandments, and abide in his love.*

2. Romans 11:21,22 For if God spared not the natural branches, take heed lest He also spare not thee. Behold therefore the goodness and severity of God: on them which fell, severity; but toward thee, goodness, *if thou continue in His goodness: otherwise thou also shalt be cut off.*

3. II Timothy 2:15,16 *Study to shew thyself approved* unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth. *But shun profane and vain babblings: for they will increase unto more ungodliness.*

4. James 1:22 *But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.*

5. I John 2:27,28 But the anointing which ye have received of Him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: *but*

## The Ultimate "How To" Book

*as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in Him. And now, little children, abide in him; that, when He shall appear, we may have confidence, and not be ashamed before Him at His coming.*

6. I John 3:6,24 *Whosoever abideth in Him sinneth not: whosoever sinneth hath not seen Him, neither known Him. Vs 24 And he that keepeth His commandments dwelleth in Him, and He in him. And hereby we know that He abideth in us, by the Spirit which He hath given us.*

7. I John 5:20 *And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know Him that is true, and we are in Him that is true, even in His Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be sanctified:

Summary -- By the water [word of God] and the blood.

1. John 17:17-19 *Sanctify them through Thy truth.* Thy word is truth. [Set apart for God] As thou hast sent Me into the world, even so have I also sent them into the world. And for their sakes I sanctify Myself, that they also might be sanctified through the truth. Neither pray I for these alone, but for them also which shall believe on Me through their word;
2. Ephesians 5:25-27 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave Himself for it; that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, that He might present it to Himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.
3. I Thessalonians 4:3,4 For this is the will of God, even your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication: That every one of you should know how to possess his vessel in sanctification and honour;
4. I Thessalonians 5:23 And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body *be preserved blameless* unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.
5. Hebrews 2:10,11 For it became Him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings. For both He that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one: for which cause He is not ashamed to call them brethren,

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

6. Hebrews 10:10 Above when He said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law; Then said He, Lo, I come to do Thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that He may establish the second. *By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.*

7. I Peter 1:2 *Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ:* Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

8. I Peter 1:14-19 As obedient children, not fashioning yourselves according to the former lusts in your ignorance: But as he which hath called you is holy, so be ye holy in all manner of conversation; because it is written, *Be ye holy; for I am holy.* And if ye call on the Father, who without respect of persons judgeth according to every man's work, pass the time of your sojourning here in fear: Forasmuch as ye know that ye were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers; but with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot:

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be transformed:

Romans 12:1,2 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that ye *present your bodies a living sacrifice*, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And *be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind*, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have lots of virtue and knowledge:

1. Mark 4:23-29 If any man have ears to hear, let him hear. And He said unto them, *Take heed what ye hear: with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you: and unto you that hear shall more be given.* [Amplified Version reads- Be careful what you are hearing. **The measure of thought and study you give to the truth you hear will be the measure of virtue and knowledge that comes back to you. . .]** *For he that hath, to him shall be given:* and he that hath not, from him shall be taken even that which he hath. And He said, So is the kingdom of God, as if a man should *cast seed into the ground;* and should sleep, and rise night and day, and the seed should spring and grow up, he knoweth not how. For the earth bringeth forth fruit of herself; first the blade, then the ear, after that the full corn in the ear. But when the fruit is brought forth, immediately he *putteth in the sickle, because the harvest is come.*

2. Luke 8:18 Take heed therefore how ye hear: for whosoever hath, to him shall be given; and whosoever hath not, from him shall be taken even that which he seemeth to have. [ Amplified Version says, **be careful how you hear, for to him who has spiritual knowledge will more be given. . .]**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to know the truth:

Summary -- Continue in Jesus’ word. Seek God in the Bible and love the turth. Receive the Spirit of Truth.

1. John 8:31,32 Then said Jesus to those Jews which believed on Him, *If ye continue in My word, then are ye My disciples indeed; and ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.*

2. John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, *the truth*, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by Me.

3. John 14:15-17 *If ye love Me, keep My commandments. And I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, that He may abide with you for ever; even the Spirit of truth*, whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth Him not, neither knoweth Him: but ye know Him; for He dwelleth with you, and *shall be in you.*

4. John 17: Sanctify them through thy truth: *Thy word is truth.*

5. II Thessalonians 2:9-12 In him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, and with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; *because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.* [Love and seek the truth in God’s word and take no pleasure in unrighteousness.]



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to protect yourself from false doctrines:

Summary -- Hold fast to the sound words of scripture.

1. Romans 16:17 Now I beseech you, brethren, *mark them which cause divisions and offences contrary to the doctrine which ye have learned; and avoid them.*
2. I Timothy 6:20 O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust, *avoiding profane and vain babblings, and oppositions of science falsely so called.*
3. II Timothy 1:12-14 For the which cause I also suffer these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that He is able to keep that which I have committed unto Him against that day. *Hold fast the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me, in faith and love which is in Christ Jesus.* That good thing which was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us.
4. II Timothy 2:16,17, 23: But *shun profane and vain babblings:* for they will increase unto more ungodliness. And their word will eat as doth a canker: . . . But *foolish and unlearned questions avoid, knowing that they do gender strifes.*
5. Titus 2:1,7,8 But *speak thou the things which become sound doctrine:* Vs 7.8 In all things shewing thyself a pattern of good works: in doctrine shewing uncorruptness, gravity, sincerity, sound speech, that cannot be condemned; that he that is of the contrary part may be ashamed, having no evil thing to say of you.
6. Titus 3:9,10 But *avoid foolish questions, and genealogies, and contentions, and strivings about the law,* for they are

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

unprofitable and vain. *A man that is an heretick after the first and second admonition reject; knowing that he that is such is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned of himself.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have joy:

Summary -- Think on the good things of your salvation and rejoice.

1. Psalms 5:11 *But let all those that put their trust in thee rejoice: let them ever shout for joy, because thou defendest them: let them also that love thy name be joyful in thee.*
2. Psalms 16:8-11 I have set the Lord always before Me: because He is at My right hand, I shall not be moved. *Therefore my heart is glad, and my glory rejoiceth: my flesh also shall rest in hope.* For thou wilt not leave My soul in hell; neither wilt thou suffer thine Holy One to see corruption. Thou wilt shew Me the path of life: in *Thy presence is fulness of joy*; at Thy right hand there are pleasures for evermore.
3. Psalms 32:11 Be glad in the Lord, and rejoice, ye righteous: and *shout for joy, all ye that are upright in heart.*
4. Psalms 43:4 Then will I go unto the altar of God, *unto God my exceeding joy*: yea, upon the harp will I praise thee, O God my God.
5. Psalms 126:5 They that sow in tears shall reap in joy.
6. Deceit is in the heart of them that imagine evil: *but to the counsellors of peace is joy.*
7. Isaiah 12:3 *Therefore with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation.*
8. Isaiah 35:10 *And the ransomed of the Lord shall return, and come to Zion with songs and everlasting joy upon their heads:*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*they shall obtain joy and gladness, and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.*

9. Isaiah 51:11 Therefore the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing unto Zion; and everlasting joy shall be upon their head: they shall obtain gladness and joy; and sorrow and mourning shall flee away.

10. Isaiah 61:3 The Spirit of the Lord God is upon Me; because the Lord hath anointed Me to preach good tidings unto the meek; He hath sent Me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound; to proclaim the acceptable year of the Lord, and the day of vengeance of our God; to comfort all that mourn; to appoint unto them that mourn in Zion, to give unto them beauty for ashes, *the oil of joy for mourning*, the garment of praise for the spirit of heaviness; that they might be called trees of righteousness, the planting of the Lord, that He might be glorified.

11. Matthew 5:11,12 *Blessed are ye, when men shall revile you, and persecute you, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for My sake. Rejoice, and be exceeding glad: for great is your reward in heaven: for so persecuted they the prophets which were before you.*

12. John 15:10,11 If ye keep My commandments, ye shall abide in My love; even as I have kept My Father's commandments, and abide in His love. These things have I spoken unto you, that *My joy might remain in you, and that your joy might be full.*

13. John 16:23,24 And in that day ye shall ask Me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in My name, He will give it you. Hitherto have ye asked nothing in my name: *ask, and ye shall receive, that your joy may be full.*

14. John 17:8-13 *For I have given unto them the words which Thou gavest Me; and they have received them, and have known*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*surely that I came out from Thee, and they have believed that Thou didst send Me. I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them which thou hast given Me; for they are Thine. And all Mine are Thine, and Thine are Mine; and I am glorified in them. And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to Thee. Holy Father, keep through Thine own name those whom Thou hast given Me, that they may be one, as we are. While I was with them in the world, I kept them in Thy name: those that Thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled. And now come I to Thee; and these things I speak in the world, that they might have My joy fulfilled in themselves.*

15. Acts 2:28 *Thou hast made known to Me the ways of life; Thou shalt make Me full of joy with Thy countenance.*

16. Acts 13:48-52 And when the Gentiles heard this, they were glad, and glorified the word of the Lord: and as many as were ordained to eternal life believed. *And the word of the Lord was published throughout all the region.* But the Jews stirred up the devout and honourable women, and the chief men of the city, and raised persecution against Paul and Barnabas, and expelled them out of their coasts. But they shook off the dust of their feet against them, and came unto Iconium. *And the disciples were filled with joy, and with the Holy Ghost.*

17. Romans 5:11 *And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.*

18. Romans 15:13 *For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost.*

19. Galatians 5:22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,

20. I John 1:1-4 That which was from the beginning, which we

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life; (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and shew unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;) That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, *that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with His Son Jesus Christ. And these things write we unto you, that your joy may be full.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to become a new creature:

II Corinthians 5:15-17 And that He died for all, that they which live should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto Him which died for them, and rose again. Wherefore henceforth know we no man after the flesh: yea, though we have known Christ after the flesh, yet now henceforth know we Him no more. *Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to receive a new heart:

Summary -- As a hart panteth for the brook, so my soul panteth after you.

1. Deuteronomy 30:2-6 And shalt return unto the Lord thy God, and shalt obey His voice according to all that I command thee this day, thou and thy children, with all thine heart, and with all thy soul; that then the Lord thy God will turn thy captivity, and have compassion upon thee, and will return and gather thee from all the nations, whither the Lord thy God hath scattered thee. If any of thine be driven out unto the outmost parts of heaven, from thence will the Lord thy God gather thee, and from thence will He fetch thee: And the Lord thy God will bring thee into the land which thy fathers possessed, and thou shalt possess it; and He will do thee good, and multiply thee above thy fathers. *And the Lord thy God will circumcise thine heart, and the heart of thy seed, to love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, that thou mayest live.*

2. II Chronicles 15:12,13 And they entered into a covenant to seek the Lord God of their fathers with all their heart and with all their soul; *that whosoever would not seek the Lord God of Israel should be put to death*, whether small or great, whether man or woman. [This suggests that if one does not seek the Lord with all their heart, they cannot receive Him and have eternal life.]

3. Psalms 78:8 : And might not be as their fathers, a stubborn and rebellious generation; a *generation that set not their heart aright*, and whose spirit was not stedfast with God. [I’m building a picture of the heart, God wants to give us.]

4. Isaiah 6:10 *Make the heart of this people fat, and make their*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.* [This is the heart we don't want to have.]

5. Isaiah 51:7 Hearken unto Me, ye that know righteousness, *the people in whose heart is My law;* fear ye not the reproach of men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

6. Isaiah 59:21 As for Me, *this is My covenant with them,* saith the Lord; *My spirit that is upon thee, and My words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth,* nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever. [That's the covenant He makes with those who have the right heart.]

7. Jeremiah 24:7 **And I will give them an heart to know Me, that I am the Lord: and they shall be My people, and I will be their God: for they shall return unto Me with their whole heart.** [That's the heart.]

8. Jeremiah 29:11-14 For I know the thoughts that I think toward you, saith the Lord, thoughts of peace, and not of evil, to give you an expected end. Then shall ye call upon Me, and ye shall go and pray unto Me, and I will hearken unto you. *And ye shall seek Me, and find Me, when ye shall search for Me with all your heart. And I will be found of you, saith the Lord: and I will turn away your captivity,* and I will gather you from all the nations, and from all the places whither I have driven you, saith the Lord; and I will bring you again into the place whence I caused you to be carried away captive.

9. Jeremiah 32:39 *And I will give them one heart, and one way, that they may fear Me for ever, for the good of them, and of their children after them:* [This is what God intended the new birth to do.]

10. Ezekiel 11:19 And I will give them one heart, and I will put a

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them an heart of flesh: [This is what Jesus’ sacrifice was really about.]

11. Ezekiel 18:31,32 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you an heart of flesh. And I will put My spirit within you, and cause you to walk in My statutes, and ye shall keep My judgments, and do them. [This is the covenant - Hebrews 8:10]

12. Joel 2:12,13 Therefore also now, saith the Lord, *turn ye even to Me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning: And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the Lord your God:* for He is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth Him of the evil. [This is how you receive it.]

13. Matthew 15:8,9 This people draweth nigh unto Me with their mouth, and honoureth Me with their lips; but their heart is far from me. But in vain they do worship Me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men. [This is why people don’t receive it.]

14. John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, *Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.*

15. John 12:40 He hath blinded their eyes, and hardened their heart; [Amplified Version says callous, degenerated heart. God told us in the books of the prophets that He had to fix our heart.] that they should not see with their eyes, nor understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them.

16. Acts 15:9 And put no difference between us and them, *purifying their hearts by faith.*

17. Galatians 4:6 And because ye are sons, *God hath sent forth*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.*

18. Hebrews 8:10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, saith the Lord; I will put My laws into their mind, and *write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they shall be to Me a people:*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to keep (protect) your heart:

Summary -- Keep your eyes (focus) on God and His kingdom.

1. Deuteronomy 20:17,18 But thou shalt utterly destroy them; namely, the Hittites, and the Amorites, the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites; as the Lord thy God hath commanded thee: That they teach you not to do after all their abominations, which they have done unto their gods; so should ye sin against the Lord your God. [Spiritually, the enemies referred to here are the inhabitants of the land or the sins, bad habits, and false gods in our lives.]

2. Joshua 23:7 That ye come not among these nations, these that remain among you; neither make mention of the name of their gods, nor cause to swear by them, neither serve them, nor bow yourselves unto them:

3. Judges 2:1-3 And an angel of the Lord came up from Gilgal to Bochim, and said, I made you to go up out of Egypt, and have brought you unto the land which I sware unto your fathers; and I said, I will never break My covenant with you. And ye shall make no league with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars: but ye have not obeyed My voice: why have ye done this? Wherefore I also said, I will not drive them out from before you; but they shall be as thorns in your sides, and their gods shall be a snare unto you. [When we come into covenant with God, this is part of it. We are receiving Him as our Father and God. All this other has to go.]

4. Proverbs 4:20-27 My son, attend to My words; incline thine ear unto My sayings. Let them not depart from thine eyes; keep them in the midst of thine heart. For they are life unto those that

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

find them, and health to all their flesh. *Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life.* Put away from thee a froward mouth, and perverse lips put far from thee. Let thine eyes look right on, and let thine eyelids look straight before thee. Ponder the path of thy feet, and let all thy ways be established. Turn not to the right hand nor to the left: remove thy foot from evil.

5. Matthew 6:33 But seek ye first the kingdom of God, and His righteousness; and all these things shall be added unto you.

6. II Thessalonians 3:6 Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye withdraw yourselves from every brother that walketh disorderly, and not after the tradition which he received of us.

7. I Timothy 6:20,21 O Timothy, keep that which is committed to thy trust, *avoiding profane and vain babblings, and oppositions of science falsely so called.* Which some professing have erred concerning the faith. Grace be with thee. Amen.

8. II Timothy 1:12-14 For the which cause I also suffer these things: nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto Him against that day. *Hold fast the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me,* in faith and love which is in Christ Jesus. That good thing which was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us.

9. II Timothy 2:16-23 But shun profane and vain babblings: for they will increase unto more ungodliness. And their word will eat as doth a canker: of whom is Hymenaeus and Philetus; who concerning the truth have erred, saying that the resurrection is past already; and overthrow the faith of some: Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are His. *And, Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity.* But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour. If a man therefore purge himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, and prepared unto every good work. *Flee also youthful lusts: but follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace,* with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart. But foolish and unlearned questions avoid, knowing that they do gender strife.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have rivers of living water:

1. Isaiah 55:1-3 Ho, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters, and he that hath no money; come ye, buy, and eat; yea, come, buy wine and milk without money and without price. Wherefore do ye spend money for that which is not bread? and your labour for that which satisfieth not? *hearken diligently unto Me, and eat ye that which is good, and let your soul delight itself in fatness. Incline your ear, and come unto Me: hear, and your soul shall live; and I will make an everlasting covenant with you, even the sure mercies of David.*

2. John 7:37-39 In the last day, that great day of the feast, Jesus stood and cried, saying, *If any man thirst, let him come unto Me, and drink. He that believeth on Me, as the scripture hath said, out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water. (But this spake He of the Spirit, which they that believe on Him should receive: for the Holy Ghost was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.)*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be delivered from your burdens:

Matthew 11:28-30 Come unto Me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest. Take My yoke upon you, and learn of Me; *for I am meek and lowly in heart:* and ye shall find rest unto your souls. For My yoke is easy, and My burden is light.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to eligible for forgiveness:

Summary -- Repent, receive, believe and forgive others.

1. Matthew 6:14,15 For if ye forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you: *But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.*

2. Matthew 18:23-35 Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, which would take account of his servants. And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents. But forasmuch as he had not to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and children, and all that he had, and payment to be made. The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay thee all. Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt. But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellowservants, which owed him an hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took him by the throat, saying, Pay me that thou owest. And his fellowservant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all. And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt. So when his fellowservants saw what was done, they were very sorry, and came and told unto their lord all that was done. Then his lord, after that he had called him, said unto him, O thou wicked servant, I forgave thee all that debt, because thou desiredst me: *Shouldest not thou also have had compassion on thy fellowservant, even as I had pity on thee?* And his lord was wroth, and delivered him to the tormentors, till he should pay all that was due unto him. So likewise shall my heavenly Father do also unto you, if ye from your hearts forgive not every one his brother their trespasses.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

3. Luke 24:47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in His name [Jesus] among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

4. John 3:16-18 For God so loved the world, that He gave His only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in Him should not perish, but have everlasting life. For God sent not His Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through Him might be saved. *He that believeth on Him is not condemned:* but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

5. Acts 10:43 To Him give all the prophets witness, that through His name whosoever believeth in Him shall receive remission of sins.

6. Acts 13:38,39 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins: And by Him [Jesus] all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

7. Hebrews 10:14-18 For by one offering He hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified. Whereof the Holy Ghost also is a witness to us: for after that He had said before, this is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, saith the Lord, I will put My laws into their hearts, and in their minds will I write them; and their sins and iniquities will I remember no more. Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

8. I John 1:9 If we confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to move mountains:

1. Matthew 21:21,22 Jesus answered and said unto them, Verily I say unto you, *If ye have faith, and doubt not, ye shall not only do this which is done to the fig tree, but also if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; it shall be done. And all things, whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive.*

2. Mark 11:23,24 For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, *but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith.* Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to put on the full armor of God:

Ephesians 6:10-19 Finally, my brethren, be strong in the Lord, and in the power of His might. Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil. For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places. Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand. Stand therefore, having your *loins girt about with truth*, and having on the *breastplate of righteousness*, and your *feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace*; above all, *taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked*. And take the *helmet of salvation*, and the *sword of the Spirit*, which is the word of God: *Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit*, and *watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints*; and for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel,

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to pray for others:

1. Philippians 1:3-7,9-11 *I thank my God upon every remembrance of you, always in every prayer of mine for you all making request with joy, for your fellowship in the gospel from the first day until now; being confident of this very thing, that He which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ: Even as it is meet for me to think this of you all, because I have you in my heart; inasmuch as both in my bonds, and in the defence and confirmation of the gospel, ye all are partakers of my grace. Vs 9-11 And this I pray, **that your love may abound yet more and more in knowledge and in all judgment; that ye may approve things that are excellent; that ye may be sincere and without offence till the day of Christ; being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, unto the glory and praise of God.***

2. Colossians 1:9-12 For this cause we also, since the day we heard it, do not cease to pray for you, and to desire *that ye might be filled with the knowledge of His will in all wisdom and spiritual understanding; that ye might walk worthy of the Lord unto all pleasing, being fruitful in every good work, and increasing in the knowledge of God; strengthened with all might, according to His glorious power, unto all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness; giving thanks unto the Father, which hath made us meet to be partakers of the inheritance of the saints in light:*

3. Colossians 2:1,2 For I would that ye knew what great conflict I have for you, and for them at Laodicea, and for as many as have not seen my face in the flesh; *that their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and unto all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ;*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

4. Colossians 4:12 Epaphras, who is one of you, a servant of Christ, saluteth you, always **labouring fervently for you in prayers**, *that ye may stand perfect and complete in all the will of God.*

5. I Thessalonians 3:11-13 Now God Himself and our Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, direct our way unto you. *And the Lord make you to increase and abound in love one toward another, and toward all men, even as we do toward you: To the end He may stablish your hearts unblameable in holiness before God, even our Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ with all His saints.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to qualify for the wedding feast:

Summary -- Put on the Lord Jesus Christ and make no provision for the flesh.

1. Matthew 22:10-13 So those servants went out into the highways, and gathered together all as many as they found, both bad and good: and the wedding was furnished with guests. And when the king came in to see the guests, he saw *there a man which had not on a wedding garment*: And he saith unto him, Friend, how camest thou in hither not having a wedding garment? And he was speechless. Then said the king to the servants, Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast him into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. [ Make sure you have on the wedding garment, Jesus. Romans 13:14]

2. Matthew 25:1-13 Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. And five of them were wise, and five were foolish. They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: *But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps*. [Make sure you are walking by the Spirit.] While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps. And the foolish said unto the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out. But the wise answered, saying, Not so; lest there be not enough for us and you: but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves. And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut. Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not. Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.

3. Revelation 19:7,8 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to Him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and His wife *hath made herself ready*. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to win the true life of your soul:

Luke 21:19 In your patience possess ye your souls. [Amplified Version say, by your steadfastness and patient endurance you shall win the true life of your souls.]

## How to build with gold, silver and precious stones:

Summary -- Make sure that Jesus is your foundation. Purge yourself of all that would make you impure.

1. Proverbs 24:3,4 Through *wisdom is an house builded*, and by *understanding it is established*: And by *knowledge shall the chambers be filled with all precious and pleasant riches*.

2. I Corinthians 3:10-15 According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon. *For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ*. Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is. If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.

3. Ephesians 2:20-22 *And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; in whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord*: In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.

4. II Timothy 2:19-21 Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are His. *And, Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity*. But in a great house there are not only vessels of

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour. *If a man therefore purge himself from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, and prepared unto every good work.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to love your neighbor:

Luke 10:29 And he answering said, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy strength, and with all thy mind; and *thy neighbour as thyself*. And he said unto him, Thou hast answered right: this do, and thou shalt live. But he, willing to justify himself, said unto Jesus, And who is my neighbour? And Jesus answering said, A certain man went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among thieves, which stripped him of his raiment, and wounded him, and departed, leaving him half dead. And by chance there came down a certain priest that way: and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. And likewise a Levite, when he was at the place, came and looked on him, and passed by on the other side. But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came where he was: and when he saw him, he had compassion on him, and went to him, and bound up his wounds, pouring in oil and wine, and set him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him. And on the morrow when he departed, he took out two pence, and gave them to the host, and said unto him, Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee. Which now of these three, thinkest thou, was neighbour unto him that fell among the thieves? And he said, He that shewed mercy on him. Then said Jesus unto him, Go, and do thou likewise.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to love God:

1. Hosea 2:20 And in that day will I make a covenant for them with the beasts of the field, and with the fowls of heaven, and with the creeping things of the ground: and I will break the bow and the sword and the battle out of the earth, and will make them to lie down safely. And I will betroth thee unto Me for ever; yea, I will betroth thee unto Me *in righteousness, and in judgment, and in lovingkindness, and in mercies. I will even betroth thee unto Me in faithfulness: and thou shalt know the Lord.* [Amplified Versions says to love Him means to recognize, be acquainted with, appreciate, give heed to and cherish Him.]
2. Matthew 22:37 Jesus said unto him, Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with *all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind.* Also Mark 12:20, Luke 10:27
3. John 14:24 *He that loveth Me not keepeth not My sayings:* and the word which ye hear is not Mine, but the Father's which sent Me.
4. John 15:12,13 This is my commandment, That ye love one another, as I have loved you. Greater love hath no man than this, *that a man lay down his life for his friends.*
5. I Corinthians 2:9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him. [The Amplified Version says that word love means hold Him in affectionate reverence, promptly obeying Him and gratefully recognizing the benefits He has bestowed.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to love others:

**I Corinthians 13:4-8** Charity suffereth long, and is kind; charity envieth not; charity vaunteth not itself, is not puffed up, doth not behave itself unseemly, seeketh not her own, is not easily provoked, thinketh no evil; rejoiceth not in iniquity, but rejoiceth in the truth; beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things, endureth all things. Charity never faileth: . . .

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to show compassion:

Luke 10:33-37 And Jesus answering said, A certain man went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among thieves, which stripped him of his raiment, and wounded him, and departed, leaving him half dead. And by chance there came down a certain priest that way: and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. And likewise a Levite, when he was at the place, came and looked on him, and passed by on the other side. But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came where he was: and when he saw him, *he had compassion on him*, and went to him, and bound up his wounds, pouring in oil and wine, and set him on his own beast, and brought him to an inn, and took care of him. And on the morrow when he departed, he took out two pence, and gave them to the host, and said unto him, Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee. Which now of these three, thinkest thou, was neighbour unto him that fell among the thieves? And he said, He that shewed mercy on him. Then said Jesus unto him, Go, and do thou likewise.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to become a joyous giver:

Summary -- Receive the Love of God for others. Believe the promises of God concerning giving.

1. Proverbs 3:9,10 Honour the Lord with thy substance, and with the firstfruits of all thine increase: *So shall thy barns be filled with plenty, and thy presses shall burst out with new wine.*

2. Malachi 3:10-12 Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in Mine house, and prove Me now herewith, saith the Lord of hosts, if *I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.* And I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes, and he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the field, saith the Lord of hosts. And all nations shall call you blessed: for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of hosts. **[Believe it!]**

3. Philippians 4:16-19 For even in Thessalonica ye sent once and again unto my necessity. Not because I desire a gift: but I desire fruit that may abound to your account. But I have all, and abound: I am full, having received of Epaphroditus the things which were sent from you, an odour of a sweet smell, a sacrifice acceptable, wellpleasing to God. *But my God shall supply all your need according to His riches in glory by Christ Jesus.*

4. II Corinthians 8:12-14,9:6-11 For if there be first a willing mind, it is accepted according to that a man hath, and not according to that he hath not. For I mean not that other men be eased, and ye burdened: But by an equality, that now at this time your abundance may be a supply for their want, that their abundance also may be a supply for your want: that there may be



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

equality: Chap. 9:6-11 But this I say, He which soweth sparingly shall reap also sparingly; *and he which soweth bountifully shall reap also bountifully.* Every man according as he purposeth in his heart, so let him give; not grudgingly, or of necessity: for God loveth a cheerful giver. *And God is able to make all grace abound toward you; that ye, always having all sufficiency in all things, may abound to every good work:* (As it is written, He hath dispersed abroad; he hath given to the poor: his righteousness remaineth for ever. *Now He that ministereth seed to the sower both minister bread for your food, and multiply your seed sown, and increase the fruits of your righteousness;)* *being enriched in every thing to all bountifulness, which causeth through us thanksgiving to God.*  
**[Believe it!]**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be a good Christian:

Summary -- Take up your cross and follow Jesus.

1. Deuteronomy 10:12,13,16,17-20 And now, Israel, what doth the Lord thy God require of thee, but to fear the Lord thy God, to walk in all His ways, and to love Him, and to serve the Lord thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul, to keep the commandments of the Lord, and his statutes, which I command thee this day for thy good? Vs 16 *Circumcise therefore the foreskin of your heart, and be no more stiffnecked.* For the Lord your God is God of gods, and Lord of lords, a great God, a mighty, and a terrible, which regardeth not persons, nor taketh reward: He doth execute the judgment of the fatherless and widow, and loveth the stranger, in giving him food and raiment. Love ye therefore the stranger: for ye were strangers in the land of Egypt. *Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God; Him shalt thou serve, and to Him shalt thou cleave, and swear by His name.*

2. Joshua 14:8,9 Nevertheless my brethren that went up with me made the heart of the people melt: but I wholly followed the Lord my God. And Moses sware on that day, saying, Surely the land whereon thy feet have trodden shall be thine inheritance, and thy children's for ever, *because thou hast wholly followed the Lord my God.*

3. Isaiah 59:21 As for Me, this is My covenant with them, saith the Lord; *My spirit that is upon thee, and My words which I have put in thy mouth, shall not depart out of thy mouth, nor out of the mouth of thy seed, nor out of the mouth of thy seed's seed, saith the Lord, from henceforth and for ever.*

4. Matthew 10:38 *And he that taketh not his cross, and followeth*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*after Me, is not worthy of Me.*

5. Romans 6-8:22 What shall we say then? Shall we continue in sin, that grace may abound? God forbid. How **shall we, that are dead to sin, live any longer therein?** Know ye not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into His death? *Therefore we are buried with Him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.* For if we have been planted together in the likeness of His death, we shall be also in the likeness of His resurrection: *Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.* For he that is dead is freed from sin. Now if we be dead with Christ, we believe that we shall also live with Him: Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dieth no more; death hath no more dominion over Him. For in that He died, He died unto sin once: but in that He liveth, He liveth unto God. *Likewise reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord.* Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof. Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace. What then? shall we sin, because we are not under the law, but under grace? God forbid. Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness? But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness. For the good that I would I do not: but the evil which I would not, that I do. I speak after the manner of men because of the infirmity of your flesh: for as ye have yielded your members servants to uncleanness and to iniquity unto iniquity; even so now yield your members servants to

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

righteousness unto holiness. For when ye were the servants of sin, ye were free from righteousness. What fruit had ye then in those things whereof ye are now ashamed? for the end of those things is death. But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, ye have your fruit unto holiness, and the end everlasting life. For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord. 7:18,19 or I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwelleth no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform that which is good I find not.

**Chap. 8 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.** For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God. But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none His. And if Christ be in you, the body is dead because of sin; but the Spirit is life because of righteousness. But if the Spirit of Him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, He that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by His Spirit that dwelleth in you. Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh. **For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die: but if ye through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, ye shall live. For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.** For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God: And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and

## The Ultimate "How To" Book

joint-heirs with Christ; *if so be that we suffer with Him, that we may be also glorified together.* For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us. For the earnest expectation of the creature waiteth for the manifestation of the sons of God.

6. Romans 12:1,2,9-21,13:1 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, *that ye present your bodies a living sacrifice, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.* Vs 9-21 Let love be without dissimulation. Abhor that which is evil; cleave to that which is good. Be kindly affectioned one to another with brotherly love; in honour preferring one another; Not slothful in business; fervent in spirit; serving the Lord; rejoicing in hope; patient in tribulation; continuing instant in prayer; distributing to the necessity of saints; given to hospitality. Bless them which persecute you: bless, and curse not. Rejoice with them that do rejoice, and weep with them that weep. Be of the same mind one toward another. Mind not high things, but condescend to men of low estate. Be not wise in your own conceits. Recompense to no man evil for evil. Provide things honest in the sight of all men. If it be possible, as much as lieth in you, live peaceably with all men. Dearly beloved, avenge not yourselves, but rather give place unto wrath: for it is written, Vengeance is mine; I will repay, saith the Lord. Therefore if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head. Be not overcome of evil, but overcome evil with good. 13:1 : Let every soul be subject unto the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God.

7. II Corinthians 4:2 But have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully; but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

8. Galatians 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and *the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God, who loved me, and gave Himself for me.*

9. Galatians 5:16-25 This I say then, *Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh.* For the flesh lusteth against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would. But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law. Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, meekness, temperance: against such there is no law. *And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.* Let us not be desirous of vain glory, provoking one another, envying one another.

10. Colossians 2:6,7 As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in Him: Rooted and built up in Him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be working the works of God:

Summary -- Believe in and abide in Jesus.

1. John 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is the work of God, that *ye believe on Him whom He hath sent*.
2. John 14:12,13 Verily, verily, I say unto you, *He that believeth on Me*, the works that I do shall he do also; and greater works than these shall he do; because I go unto my Father. And whatsoever ye shall ask in My name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.
3. John 15:5 I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without Me ye can do nothing.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to walk:

1. Ephesians 4:1-3 I therefore, the prisoner of the Lord, beseech you that ye *walk worthy of the vocation wherewith ye are called, with all lowliness and meekness, with longsuffering, forbearing one another in love; endeavouring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.*
2. Ephesians 5:2 *And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet smelling savour.*
3. Ephesians 5:15-17 See then that ye *walk circumspectly*, not as fools, but as wise, redeeming the time, because the days are evil. *Wherefore be ye not unwise, but understanding what the will of the Lord is.*
4. Romans 4:7-12 Saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered. Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin. Cometh this blessedness then upon the circumcision only, or upon the uncircumcision also? for we say that faith was reckoned to Abraham for righteousness. How was it then reckoned? when he was in circumcision, or in uncircumcision? Not in circumcision, but in uncircumcision. And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: *that he might be the father of all them that believe, though they be not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed unto them also:* And the father of circumcision to them who are not of the circumcision only, *but who also walk in the steps of that faith of our father Abraham*, which he had being yet uncircumcised.
5. Romans 6:4 Therefore we are buried with Him by baptism into



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should *walk in newness of life*.

6. Romans 8:4 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who *walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit*.

7. Colossians 4:5 *Walk in wisdom* toward them that are without, redeeming the time.

8. I John 1:7 But if we *walk in the light, as He is in the light*, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ His Son cleanseth us from all sin.

9. Revelation 16:15 Behold, I come as a thief. *Blessed is he that watcheth, and keepeth his garments, lest he walk naked, and they see his shame*.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be humble:

Philippians 2:2-9 Fulfil ye my joy, that ye be likeminded, having the same love, being of one accord, of one mind. Let nothing be done through strife or vainglory; *but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves.* Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others. *Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus:* Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: *But made Himself of no reputation, and took upon Him the form of a servant,* and was made in the likeness of men: And being found in fashion as a man, *He humbled Himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.* Wherefore God also hath highly exalted Him, and given him a name which is above every name:

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be fully equipped to be God’s witness:

Summary -- Believe the scriptures and be instructed by them. They speak of our need for the Holy Spirit.

1. Luke 24:48,49 And ye are witnesses of these things. And, behold, I send the promise of My Father upon you: *but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.*
2. Acts 1:8 *But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.*
3. Acts 2:1-4 And when the day of Pentecost was fully come, they were all with one accord in one place. And suddenly there came a sound from heaven as of a rushing mighty wind, and it filled all the house where they were sitting: And there appeared unto them cloven tongues like as of fire, and it sat upon each of them. And they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, as the Spirit gave them utterance.
4. Acts 4:29-31 And now, Lord, behold their threatenings: and grant unto Thy servants, that with all boldness they may speak Thy word, by stretching forth Thine hand to heal; and that signs and wonders may be done by the name of Thy holy child Jesus. And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness.
5. Acts 5:32 And we are His witnesses of these things; and so is also the Holy Ghost, whom God hath given to them that obey Him.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

6. Acts 14:3 *Long time therefore abode they speaking boldly in the Lord, which gave testimony unto the word of His grace, and granted signs and wonders to be done by their hands.*

7. II Timothy 3:16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: *That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.*

## How to be an active member of Christ's body:

1. Romans 12:5-8 For as we have many members in one body, and all members have not the same office: So we, being many, are one body in Christ, and **every one members one of another**. Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given to us, whether prophecy, **let us prophesy according** to the proportion of faith; or ministry, **let us wait on** our ministering: or he that teacheth, on teaching; or he that exhorteth, on exhortation: **he that giveth, let him do it with simplicity**; he that ruleth, **with diligence**; he that sheweth mercy, **with cheerfulness**.

2. I Corinthians 12:14-27 For the body is **not one member, but many**. If the foot shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body? If the whole body were an eye, where were the hearing? If the whole were hearing, where were the smelling? **But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased Him**. And if they were all one member, where were the body? **But now are they many members, yet but one body**. *And the eye cannot say unto the hand, I have no need of thee: nor again the head to the feet, I have no need of you. Nay, much more those members of the body, which seem to be more feeble, are necessary:* And those members of the body, which we think to be less honourable, upon these we bestow more abundant honour; and our uncomely parts have more abundant comeliness. For our comely parts have no need: but God hath tempered the body together, having given more abundant honour to that part which lacked: **That there should be no schism in the body; but that the members should have the same care one for another**. And whether one member suffer, all the members suffer with it; or one member be honoured, all the members rejoice with it. Now ye are

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

the body of Christ, and members in particular.

3. Ephesians 4:15,16 **But speaking the truth in love, *may grow up into Him in all things,*** which is the head, even Christ: From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which **every joint supplieth,** according to the **effectual working in the measure of every part,** *maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be ready for the Lord’s return:

Summary -- Watch, pray and occupy.

1. Matthew 24:42-44 Watch therefore: [Amplified Version- give strict attention, be cautious and active] for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come. But know this, that if the goodman of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up. Therefore be ye also ready: for in such an hour as ye think not the Son of man cometh.

2. Matthew 25:2-13 Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. And five of them were wise, and five were foolish. *They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps.* While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept. And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him. Then all those virgins arose, and trimmed their lamps. And the foolish said unto the wise, Give us of your oil; for our lamps are gone out. But the wise answered, saying, Not so; lest there be not enough for us and you: but go ye rather to them that sell, and buy for yourselves. And while they went to buy, the bridegroom came; and they that were ready went in with him to the marriage: and the door was shut. Afterward came also the other virgins, saying, Lord, Lord, open to us. But he answered and said, Verily I say unto you, I know you not. *Watch therefore, for ye know neither the day nor the hour wherein the Son of man cometh.*

3. Luke 21:36 Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

pass, and to stand before the Son of man. [Amplified Version says, praying that you may have the full strength and ability and be accounted worthy to escape all these things that will take place, and to stand in the presence of the Son of man.]

4. II Thessalonians 2:9-15 Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, and with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; *because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.* And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness. But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth: Whereunto He called you by our gospel, to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ. Therefore, brethren, *stand fast, and hold the traditions which ye have been taught, whether by word, or our epistle.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to get saved, healed and delivered:

Summary -- Repent, believe and receive.

1. Matthew 13:15 For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and *should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.*

2. Mark 11:23,24 For verily I say unto you, That whosoever shall say unto this mountain, Be thou removed, and be thou cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he saith shall come to pass; he shall have whatsoever he saith. Therefore I say unto you, *What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.*

3. Luke 4:18 : The Spirit of the Lord is upon Me, because He hath anointed Me to preach the gospel to the poor; He hath sent Me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised, [Jesus paid the price and Jesus has the power and Jesus says, ‘yes’ to your needs. II Cor. 1:20]

## How to be sure you will hear ‘well done’ at the end of your journey:

Matthew 25:14-23 For the kingdom of heaven is as a man traveling into a far country, who called his own servants, and delivered unto them his goods. And unto one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one; to every man according to his several ability; and straightway took his journey. Then he that had received the five talents went and traded with the same, and made them other five talents. And likewise he that had received two, he also gained other two. But he that had received one went and digged in the earth, and hid his lord's money. After a long time the lord of those servants cometh, and reckoneth with them. And so he that had received five talents came and brought other five talents, saying, Lord, thou deliveredst unto me five talents: behold, I have gained beside them five talents more. His lord said unto him, Well done, thou good and faithful servant: thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord. He also that had received two talents came and said, Lord, thou deliveredst unto me two talents: behold, I have gained two other talents beside them. His lord said unto him, *Well done, good and faithful servant; thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things: enter thou into the joy of thy lord.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to reverence your husband:

1. Ephesians 5:22-24 Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and He is the Saviour of the body. Therefore as the church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in every thing.

2. I Peter 3:1-6 Likewise, ye wives, be in subjection to your own husbands; that, if any obey not the word, they also may without the word be won by the conversation of the wives; while they behold your chaste conversation coupled with fear. Whose adorning let it not be that outward adorning of plaiting the hair, and of wearing of gold, or of putting on of apparel; but let it be the hidden man of the heart, in that which is not corruptible, even the ornament of a meek and quiet spirit, which is in the sight of God of great price. For after this manner in the old time the holy women also, who trusted in God, adorned themselves, being in subjection unto their own husbands: **[Amplified Version says, reverence your husband- that is to respect, defer to, revere him; revere means to honor, esteem, appreciate, prize, and in the human sense adore him- adore means to admire, praise, be devoted to, deeply love and enjoy your husband.]** Even as Sara obeyed Abraham, calling him lord: whose daughters ye are, as long as ye do well, and are not afraid with any amazement.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to love your wife:

1. Luke 22:25,26 [**Pertaining to exercising authority**] And He said unto them, The kings of the Gentiles exercise lordship over them; and they that exercise authority upon them are called benefactors. But ye shall not be so: but he that is greatest among you, let him be as the younger; *and he that is chief, as he that doth serve.*

2. Ephesians 5:25-31 Husbands, love your wives, **even as Christ also loved the church, and gave Himself for it;** that He might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word, that He might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish. So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies. He that loveth his wife loveth himself. *For no man ever yet hated his own flesh; but nourisheth and cherisheth it, even as the Lord the church:* For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

3. I Peter 3:7 : Likewise, ye husbands, dwell with them according to knowledge, *giving honour unto the wife, as unto the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life; that your prayers be not hindered.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to fulfill the great commission:

Matthew 28:18-20 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto Me in heaven and in earth. *Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost: Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be Jesus’ brother or sister:

Summary -- Listen to and obey God.

1. Mark 3:34,35 And He looked round about on them which sat about Him, and said, Behold My mother and My brethren! *For whosoever shall do the will of God, the same is my brother, and my sister, and mother.*

2. Luke 8:21 And He answered and said unto them, My mother and My brethren *are these which hear the word of God, and do it.*

3. II Corinthians 6:16-7:1 And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be My people. *Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you, And will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be My sons and daughters,* saith the Lord Almighty. Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

4. II Timothy 2:19 Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are His. And, *Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to qualify for the kingdom:

Summary -- Receive God’s Spirit and act as He directs. Be prepared to suffer persecution and don’t keep looking back to what you used to have or do.

1. Matthew 25:34-40 Then shall the King say unto them on His right hand, *Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.* For I was an hungered, and ye gave Me meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave Me drink: I was a stranger, and ye took Me in: Naked, and ye clothed Me: I was sick, and ye visited Me: I was in prison, and ye came unto Me. Then shall the righteous answer Him, saying, Lord, when saw we Thee an hungered, and fed Thee? or thirsty, and gave Thee drink? When saw we Thee a stranger, and took Thee in? or naked, and clothed Thee? Or when saw we Thee sick, or in prison, and came unto Thee? And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these My brethren, ye have done it unto Me.

2. Luke 9:62 : And Jesus said unto him, No man, having put his hand to the plough, and looking back, is fit for the kingdom of God.

3. Acts 14:21,22 And when they had preached the gospel to that city, and had taught many, they returned again to Lystra, and to Iconium, and Antioch, confirming the souls of the disciples, and *exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must through much tribulation enter into the kingdom of God.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to Win Christ:

Philippians 3:7-11 But what things were gain to me, those I counted loss for Christ. Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and *do count them but dung, that I may win Christ, and be found in Him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith: That I may know Him, and the power of His resurrection, and the fellowship of His sufferings, being made conformable unto His death; if by any means I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to press toward the mark:

Philippians 3:8-14 Yea doubtless, and I count all things but loss for the excellency of the knowledge of Christ Jesus my Lord: for whom I have suffered the loss of all things, and do count them but dung, that I may win Christ, and be found in Him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith: That I may know Him, and the power of His resurrection, and the fellowship of His sufferings, being made conformable unto His death; if by any means **I might attain unto the resurrection of the dead.** [this is the mark] Not as though I had already attained, either **were already perfect:** but I follow after, *if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.* Brethren, I count not myself to have apprehended: but this one thing I do, *forgetting those things which are behind, and reaching forth unto those things which are before, I press toward the mark for the prize of the high calling of God in Christ Jesus.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be a partaker of Christ:

Hebrews 3:12-14 Take heed, brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living God. But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin. *For we are made partakers of Christ, if we hold the beginning of our confidence stedfast unto the end;*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have your soul saved:

James 1:21,22 *Wherefore lay apart all filthiness and superfluity of naughtiness, and receive with meekness the engrafted word, which is able to save your souls. But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to suffer patiently:

Summary -- Learn to rejoice in your suffering, knowing that it is for good purpose, that you're pleasing God and that you will be rewarded.

1. I Peter 2:20-24 For what glory is it, if, when ye be buffeted for your faults, ye shall take it patiently? but if, when ye do well, and suffer for it, ye take it patiently, this is acceptable with God. For even hereunto were ye called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow His steps: Who did no sin, neither was guile found in His mouth: Who, *when He was reviled, reviled not again; when He suffered, he threatened not; but committed Himself to Him that judgeth righteously:* Who His own self bare our sins in His own body on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.

2. I Peter 4:1,12-14,19 *Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves likewise with the same mind: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin;* Vs 12-14 Beloved, *think it not strange concerning the fiery trial which is to try you, as though some strange thing happened unto you: But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings;* that, when His glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy. If ye be reproached for the name of Christ, happy are ye; for the spirit of glory and of God resteth upon you; Vs 19 *Wherefore let them that suffer according to the will of God commit the keeping of their souls to him in well doing, as unto a faithful Creator.*

3. I Peter 5:6-10 *Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God,* that He may exalt you in due time: Casting all your

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

care upon Him; for He careth for you. Be sober, be vigilant; *because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world.* 10: But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto His eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be a partaker of His divine nature:

II Peter 1:3,4 According as His divine power hath given unto us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, through the knowledge of Him that hath called us to glory and virtue: *Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to live pure:

Summary -- Flee from fornication, idolatry, and youthful lusts. Purge yourself and sow only good seed.

1. I Corinthians 5:7,8 *Purge out therefore the old leaven*, that ye may be a new lump, as ye are unleavened. For even Christ our passover is sacrificed for us: Therefore let us keep the feast, *not with old leaven, neither with the leaven of malice and wickedness; but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth.*

2. I Corinthians 6:18 *Flee fornication.* Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body.

3. I Corinthians 10:14 Wherefore, my dearly beloved, *flee from idolatry.*

4. Galatians 6:7-9 Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. *For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting.* And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.

5. I Thessalonians 4:7 For God hath not called us unto uncleanness, but unto holiness. [Amplified Version reads: For God has not called us to impurity, but to consecration (to dedicate ourselves to the most thorough purity.)]

6. II Timothy 2:20-22 But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour. If a man therefore *purge*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*himself from these*, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, and prepared unto every good work. *Flee also youthful lusts*: [high pressures pertaining to youth] but follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart.

7. Titus 2:11,12 For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, teaching us that, *denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world*;

8. James 4:7-10 *Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil*, and he will flee from you. *Draw nigh to God*, and He will draw nigh to you. *Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded*. Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy to heaviness. Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and He shall lift you up.

9. II Peter 3:11 *Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness*,



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to escape temptation:

Summary -- Watch and pray. Sow to the spirit. Obey Jesus' teachings.

1. Matthew 7:24,25 Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of Mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, which *built his house upon a rock*: And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not: for it was founded upon a rock.

2. Mark 14:38 *Watch ye and pray, lest ye enter into temptation.* The spirit truly is ready, but the flesh is weak.

3. Luke 18:1 And He spake a parable unto them to this end, *that men ought always to pray, and not to faint*;

4. Romans 13:14 *But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.*

5. I Corinthians 10:13, 14 There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also *make a way to escape*, that ye may be able to bear it. *Wherefore, My dearly beloved, flee from idolatry.*

6. Galatians 6:7,8 Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. *For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting.*

7. James 1:14,15 But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed. *Then when lust hath conceived,*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

it bringeth forth sin: and sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death. [Don't let yourself be drawn away.]

8. James 4:4-10 Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God. Do ye think that the scripture saith in vain, The spirit that dwelleth in us lusteth to envy? But he giveth more grace. Wherefore he saith, God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble. *Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.* Draw nigh to God, and he will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded. Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy to heaviness. *Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and He shall lift you up.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be set free from sin:

1. John 8:34-36 Jesus answered them, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whosoever committeth sin is the servant of sin. And the servant abideth not in the house for ever: but the Son abideth ever. If the Son therefore shall make you free, ye shall be free indeed.

2. Romans 6:6,7 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. For he that is dead is freed from sin.

3. Romans 6:11-18 Likewise *reckon ye also yourselves to be dead indeed unto sin, but alive unto God through Jesus Christ our Lord. Let not sin therefore reign* in your mortal body, that ye should obey it in the lusts thereof. *Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God. For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.* 15: What then? shall we sin, because we are not under the law, but under grace? God forbid. Know ye not, that to whom ye yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants ye are to whom ye obey; whether of sin unto death, or of obedience unto righteousness? But God be thanked, that ye were the servants of sin, *but ye have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. Being then made free from sin, ye became the servants of righteousness.*

4. Romans 8:1-6 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, *who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.* For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death. For what the law

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending His own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. For they that are after the flesh do mind the things of the flesh; but they that are after the Spirit the things of the Spirit. [Amplified Version says, But those who are according to the Spirit and controlled by the desires of the Spirit, *set their minds on and seek those things which gratify the Holy Spirit.*] For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid being misled:

Summary -- Take heed what you hear and love the truth.

1. Psalms 119:105 Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path.

2. Matthew 7:15-18 Beware of false prophets, which come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravening wolves. *Ye shall know them by their fruits.* Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit; but a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit. A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither can a corrupt tree bring forth good fruit. Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. Wherefore by their fruits ye shall know them.

3. Mark 13:5,23,33,35 And Jesus answering them began to say, Take heed lest any man deceive you: [Take heed means be warned that some will try to mislead and be watchful and careful so it doesn't happen to you. Vs 9, 23 and 33. Jesus says take heed, again. In Vs 33, He adds, *watch and pray.* for ye know not when the time is.

4. Luke 21:34-36 *And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and so that day come upon you unawares.* For as a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. *Watch ye therefore, and pray always,* that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man.

5. Galatians 5:16 This I say then, *Walk in the Spirit, and ye shall not fulfil the lust of the flesh.* For the flesh lusteth against the

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that ye cannot do the things that ye would. But if ye be led of the Spirit, ye are not under the law.

6. Galatians 6:7-9 Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap. For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting. And let us not be weary in well doing: for in due season we shall reap, if we faint not.

7. II Thessalonians 2:10-12 And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; *because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.* And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: *That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to escape the snare:

Summary -- Have on the breastplate of faith and love and the helmet of our hope of salvation so that we will not be caught up in the cares and lusts of the world.

1. Luke 21: 34-36 *And take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and so that day come upon you unawares. For as a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man.*

2. I Thessalonians 5:5,6 : *Ye are all the children of light, and the children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness. Therefore let us not sleep, as do others; but let us watch and be sober. For they that sleep sleep in the night; and they that be drunken are drunken in the night. But let us, who are of the day, be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation. For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ,*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain mercy and help:

Hebrews 4:16 *Let us therefore come boldly unto the throne of grace*, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need.



## How to be delivered from the god of this world:

1. Romans 5:14-17 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come. But not as the offence, *so also is the free gift*. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many. And not as it was by one that sinned, so is the gift: for the judgment was by one to condemnation, but the free gift is of many offences unto justification. *For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the **gift of righteousness** shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.)*

2. Ephesians 2:1-6 And you hath He quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience: Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. But God, who is rich in mercy, *for His great love wherewith He loved us, even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;) and hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be acceptable to God:

1. Acts 10:34,35 Then Peter opened his mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons: But in every nation *he that feareth Him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with Him.*
2. Romans 8:6-8 For to be carnally minded is death; but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. *So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God. [Amplified Version says, cannot please God or be acceptable to Him.]*
3. Romans 14:17,18 : For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but *righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost. For he that in these things serveth Christ is acceptable to God, and approved of men.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be able to tell if teaching is from God:

John 7:17,18 *If any man will do His will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself. He that speaketh of himself seeketh his own glory: but he that seeketh His glory that sent him, the same is true, and no unrighteousness is in him.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be able to hear the word of God:

John 8:47 *He that is of God heareth God's words: ye therefore hear them not, because ye are not of God.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be a star:

Philippians 2:2-15 Fulfil ye my joy, that ye be likeminded, having the same love, being of one accord, of one mind. Let nothing be done through strife or vainglory; but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves. Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others. Let this mind be in you, which was also in Christ Jesus: Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God: But made Himself of no reputation, and took upon Him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: And being found in fashion as a man, He humbled Himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross. Wherefore God also hath highly exalted Him, and given Him a name which is above every name: That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth; and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father. Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of His good pleasure. Do all things without murmurings and disputings: That ye may be blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, *among whom ye shine as lights in the world;* [Amplified Version says, as stars or beacons . . .]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid fainting:

Summary -- Pray, believing that your Father is working on your behalf and knowing that we have a much better tomorrow.

1. Luke 18:1-8 And He spake a parable unto them to this end, that men ought *always to pray, and not to faint*, saying, There was in a city a judge, which feared not God, neither regarded man: And there was a widow in that city; and she came unto him, saying, Avenge me of mine adversary. And he would not for a while: but afterward he said within himself, Though I fear not God, nor regard man; yet because this widow troubleth me, I will avenge her, lest by her continual coming she weary me. And the Lord said, Hear what the unjust judge saith. And shall not God avenge His own elect, which cry day and night unto Him, though He bear long with them? *I tell you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth?*

2. II Corinthians 4:13-18 We having the same spirit of faith, according as it is written, I believed, and therefore have I spoken; we also believe, and therefore speak; *knowing that He which raised up the Lord Jesus shall raise up us also by Jesus, and shall present us with you.* For all things are for your sakes, that the abundant grace might through the thanksgiving of many redound to the glory of God. *For which cause we faint not*, but though our outward man perish, yet the inward man is renewed day by day. *For our light affliction, which is but for a moment, worketh for us a far more exceeding and eternal weight of glory; while we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.*

3. Galatians 6:9 And let us not be weary in well doing: *for in due*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*season we shall reap, if we faint not.*

4. Colossians 3:2,3 *Set your affection on things above, not on things on the earth.* For ye are dead, and your life is hid with Christ in God.

5. Hebrews 12:1-7 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, *let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us,* looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God. *For consider Him that endured such contradiction of sinners against himself, lest ye be wearied and faint in your minds.* Ye have not yet resisted unto blood, striving against sin. And ye have forgotten the exhortation which speaketh unto you as unto children, My son, despise not thou the chastening of the Lord, nor faint when thou art rebuked of Him: For whom the Lord loveth He chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom He receiveth. *If ye endure chastening, God dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the father chasteneth not?*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid falling:

*II Peter 1:5-10 And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; and to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; and to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity. For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. But he that lacketh these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and hath forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. Wherefore the rather, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if ye do these things, ye shall never fall:*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to handle tests and trials:

Summary -- You have need of patience that after you have done the will of God, you might receive the promise. The trying of your faith is more precious than gold.

1. Psalms 37: 1-11 Fret not thyself because of evildoers, neither be thou envious against the workers of iniquity. For they shall soon be cut down like the grass, and wither as the green herb. *Trust in the Lord, and do good; so shalt thou dwell in the land, and verily thou shalt be fed. Delight thyself also in the Lord; and He shall give thee the desires of thine heart. Commit thy way unto the Lord; trust also in Him; and He shall bring it to pass.* And he shall bring forth thy righteousness as the light, and thy judgment as the noonday. Rest in the Lord, and wait patiently for Him: fret not thyself because of him who prospereth in his way, because of the man who bringeth wicked devices to pass. Cease from anger, and forsake wrath: fret not thyself in any wise to do evil. For evildoers shall be cut off: but those that wait upon the Lord, they shall inherit the earth. For yet a little while, and the wicked shall not be: yea, thou shalt diligently consider his place, and it shall not be. But the meek shall inherit the earth; and shall delight themselves in the abundance of peace.

2. Romans 5:1-5 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ: *By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God. And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience; and patience, experience; and experience, hope: And hope maketh not ashamed;* because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Ghost which is given unto us.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

3. Romans 8:26-28 Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered. And He that searcheth the hearts knoweth what is the mind of the Spirit, because He maketh intercession for the saints according to the will of God. *And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according His purpose.*

4. Ephesians 4:17,18 This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that ye henceforth walk not as other Gentiles walk, *in the vanity of their mind, having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart:*

5. Philippians 4:6-8 Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God. And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus. Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things.

6. II Timothy 2:12 Therefore I endure all things for the elect's sakes, that they may also obtain the salvation which is in Christ Jesus with eternal glory. It is a faithful saying: For if we be dead with Him, we shall also live with Him: *If we suffer, we shall also reign with Him:* if we deny him, He also will deny us:

7. Hebrews 10:35-38 *Cast not away therefore your confidence, which hath great recompence of reward. For ye have need of patience, that, after ye have done the will of God, ye might receive the promise.* For yet a little while, and He that shall come will come, and will not tarry. Now the just shall live by faith: but if any man draw back, My soul shall have no pleasure in him.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

8. Hebrews 12:1-3 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and *let us run with patience the race that is set before us*, looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God. *For consider Him that endured such contradiction of sinners against Himself, lest ye be wearied and faint in your minds.*

9. James 1:2-4 My brethren, count it all joy when ye fall into divers temptations; knowing this, that the trying of your faith worketh patience. But let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

10. James 4:6-10 But He giveth more grace. *Wherefore he saith, God resisteth the proud, but giveth grace unto the humble.* Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. *Draw nigh to God, and He will draw nigh to you. Cleanse your hands, ye sinners; and purify your hearts, ye double minded.* Be afflicted, and mourn, and weep: let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy to heaviness. Humble yourselves in the sight of the Lord, and he shall lift you up.

11. I Peter 1:4-7 To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven for you, who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time. *Wherein ye greatly rejoice, though now for a season, if need be, ye are in heaviness through manifold temptations: That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ:*

12. I Peter 4:1,2 Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, *arm yourselves likewise with the same mind:* [

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

Amplified Version says the mind of Christ was to suffer rather than to fail to please God.] *for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin;* that he no longer should live the rest of his time in the flesh to the lusts of men, but to the will of God.

13. I Peter 4:12 Beloved, think it not strange concerning the *fiery trial which is to try you*, as though some strange thing happened unto you: But rejoice, inasmuch as ye are partakers of Christ's sufferings; that, when His glory shall be revealed, ye may be glad also with exceeding joy.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be empowered to minister:

Mark 16:27,18 And these signs shall follow *them that believe*; *In My name* shall they cast out devils; they shall speak with new tongues; they shall take up serpents; and if they drink any deadly thing, it shall not hurt them; they shall lay hands on the sick, and they shall recover.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be refreshed:

Acts 3:19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord;

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be built up in the Lord:

1. Acts 20:32 And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and *to the word of His grace, which is able to build you up*, and to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified.
2. II Corinthians 3:18 But we all, with open *face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image* from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.
3. Ephesians 2:19-22 Now therefore ye are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints, and of the household of God; *and are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone; in whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord: In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.*
4. Colossians 2:6,7 *As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in Him: Rooted and built up in Him, and stablished in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.*
5. I Thessalonians 2:13 For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, *when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to make Jesus your Lord:

1. Luke 6:46 And why call ye me, Lord, Lord, and *do not the things which I say?*
2. Luke 9:35 : And there came a voice out of the cloud, saying, This is my beloved Son: *hear Him*. [Amplified Version says, listen to and yield to and obey Him.]



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to come out of the world:

Summary -- Love not the world, neither the things of the world. Love and worship God.

1. Judges 2:2 *And ye shall make no league [covenant] with the inhabitants of this land; ye shall throw down their altars:* but ye have not obeyed My voice: why have ye done this?
2. Romans 12:1,2 I beseech you therefore, brethren, by the mercies of God, that *ye present your bodies a living sacrifice*, holy, acceptable unto God, which is your reasonable service. *And be not conformed to this world: but be ye transformed by the renewing of your mind*, that ye may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God.
3. II Corinthians 4:2 But *have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness, nor handling the word of God deceitfully;* but by manifestation of the truth commending ourselves to every man's conscience in the sight of God.
4. II Corinthians 6:14-18 *Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship hath righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion hath light with darkness? And what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel?* And what agreement hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people. *Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you, and will be a Father unto you, and ye shall be My sons and daughters, saith the Lord Almighty.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

5. Ephesians 4:17-24 This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that ye henceforth *walk not as other Gentiles walk*, [Amplified Version says you must no longer live as the heathen do in their perverseness- in the folly, vanity and emptiness of their souls and the futility of their minds.] in the vanity of their mind, having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: Who being past feeling have given themselves over unto lasciviousness, to work all uncleanness with greediness. But ye have not so learned Christ; if so be that ye have heard Him, and have been taught by Him, as the truth is in Jesus: *That ye put off concerning the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; and be renewed in the spirit of your mind; and that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.*

6. James 4:4 *Ye adulterers and adulteresses, know ye not that the friendship of the world is enmity with God? whosoever therefore will be a friend of the world is the enemy of God.*

7. I John 2:15-17 *Love not the world, neither the things that are in the world.* If any man love the world, the love of the Father is not in him. For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. And the world passeth away, and the lust thereof: but he that doeth the will of God abideth for ever.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be hated by the world:

1. John 7:7 The world cannot hate you [talking to His worldly brothers]; but Me it hateth, *because I testify of it, that the works thereof are evil.*
2. John 15:18,19 If the world hate you, ye know that it hated Me before it hated you. If ye were of the world, the world would love his own: *but because ye are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you.*
3. John 17:14 I have given them Thy word; and *the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid being a stumbling-block:

1. Matthew 16:23 But He turned, and said unto Peter, Get thee behind Me, Satan: thou art an offence unto Me: for thou savourest not the things that be of God, but those that be of men. [Amplified Version says stumbling-block rather than offence.]

2. I Corinthians 8:9-13 But take heed lest by any means this liberty of yours become a stumblingblock to them that are weak. For if any man see thee which hast knowledge sit at meat in the idol's temple, shall not the conscience of him which is weak be emboldened to eat those things which are offered to idols; and through thy knowledge shall the weak brother perish, for whom Christ died? But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ. Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend, I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend. **[Consider others.]**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid becoming a spiritual sluggard:

Hebrews 6:10-12 For God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labour of *love, which ye have shewed toward His name, in that ye have ministered to the saints, and do minister. And we desire that every one of you do shew the same diligence to the full assurance of hope unto the end.* That ye be not slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to dress:

Summary -- Put off the old man and put on the new man which is in the image of Jesus.

1. Judges 6:34 But the Spirit of the Lord came upon Gideon, and he blew a trumpet; [Amplified Version says, the Spirit of the Lord clothed Gideon with Himself and took possession of him. . .]

2. Romans 13:14 *But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ*, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.

3. Galatians 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

4. Ephesians 4:22-24 That ye put off concerning the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; and be renewed in the spirit of your mind; *and that ye put on the new man*, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.

5. Ephesians 6:11 *Put on the whole armour of God*, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.

6. Colossians 2:11 In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, *in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ*: [Amplified Bible says, the whole corrupt carnal nature with its passions and lusts.]

7. Colossians 3:8-14 But now ye also put off all these; anger, wrath, malice, blasphemy, filthy communication out of your mouth. Lie not one to another, seeing that ye have *put off the old man* with his deeds; and have *put on the new man*, which is renewed in

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*knowledge after the image of him that created him:* Where there is neither Greek nor Jew, circumcision nor uncircumcision, Barbarian, Scythian, bond nor free: but Christ is all, and in all. Put on therefore, as the elect of God, holy and beloved, bowels of mercies, kindness, humbleness of mind, meekness, longsuffering; forbearing one another, and forgiving one another, if any man have a quarrel against any: Even as Christ forgave you, so also do ye. And above all these things *put on charity*, which is the bond of perfectness.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to grow up: (spiritually)

Summary -- Develop a close personal relationship with Jesus your Lord.

1. Matthew 5:43-48 Ye have heard that it hath been said, Thou shalt love thy neighbour, and hate thine enemy. But I say unto you, *Love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them which despitefully use you, and persecute you;* that ye may be the children of your Father which is in heaven: for He maketh His sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. For if ye love them which love you, what reward have ye? do not even the publicans the same? And if ye salute your brethren only, what do ye more than others? do not even the publicans so? Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect.

2. John 14:15-21 If ye love Me, keep My commandments. And I will pray the Father, and He shall give you another Comforter, *that He may abide with you for ever; even the Spirit of truth;* whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth Him not, neither knoweth Him: *but ye know Him;* for He dwelleth with you, and shall be in you. I will not leave you comfortless: I will come to you. Yet a little while, and the world seeth Me no more; but ye see Me: because I live, ye shall live also. At that day *ye shall know that I am in My Father, and ye in Me, and I in you. He that hath My commandments, and keepeth them, he it is that loveth Me: and he that loveth Me shall be loved of My Father, and I will love him, and will manifest Myself to him.*

3. John 15:1-5 I am the true vine, and My Father is the husbandman. Every branch in Me that beareth not fruit He taketh



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

away: and every branch that beareth fruit, He purgeth it, that it may bring forth more fruit. Now ye are clean through the word which I have spoken unto you. *Abide in Me, and I in you.* As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can ye, except ye abide in Me. I am the vine, ye are the branches: He that abideth in Me, and I in him, the same bringeth forth much fruit: for without Me ye can do nothing.

4. Ephesians 4:7-16 But unto every one of us is given grace according to the measure of the gift of Christ. Wherefore He saith, When He ascended up on high, He led captivity captive, and gave gifts unto men. (Now that He ascended, what is it but that He also descended first into the lower parts of the earth? He that descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, **that He might fill all things.**) And *He gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; for the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ: Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:* That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive; but speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ: From whom the whole *body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.*

5. Colossians 1:27,28 To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles; which is **Christ in you, the hope of glory:** Whom we preach, warning every man, and teaching every man in all wisdom; *that we may present every man perfect in Christ Jesus:*

6. II Peter 1:3-8 According as His divine power *hath given unto*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

*us all things that pertain unto life and godliness, **through the knowledge of Him** that hath called us to glory and virtue: *Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature*, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. And beside this, *giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; and to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; and to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity.* For if these things be in you, and abound, they make you that ye shall neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to accomplish the impossible:

Hebrews 11:33,34 : Who *through faith* subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions, quenched the violence of fire, escaped the edge of the sword, out of weakness were made strong, waxed valiant in fight, turned to flight the armies of the aliens.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to run the race with patience:

Hebrews 12:1-4 Wherefore seeing we also are compassed about with so great a cloud of witnesses, *let us lay aside every weight, and the sin which doth so easily beset us, and let us run with patience the race that is set before us, looking unto Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before Him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God. For consider Him that endured such contradiction of sinners against Himself, lest ye be wearied and faint in your minds. Ye have not yet resisted unto blood, striving against sin.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be a vessel of honor:

II Timothy 2:19-21 : Nevertheless the foundation of God standeth sure, having this seal, The Lord knoweth them that are His. And, Let every one that nameth the name of Christ depart from iniquity. But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honour, and some to dishonour. *If a man therefore **purge himself** from these, he shall be a vessel unto honour, sanctified, and meet for the master's use, and prepared unto every good work.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to get anointed with the oil of joy:

Hebrews 1:9 *Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity,* therefore God, even Thy God, hath anointed Thee with the oil of gladness above Thy fellows.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to know you are in Him:

*1 John 2:3-5 And hereby we do know that we know Him, if we keep His commandments. He that saith, I know Him, and keepeth not His commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. But whoso keepeth His word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in Him.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to discern the spirit of antichrist:

*1 John 4:3 And every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God: and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof ye have heard that it should come; and even now already is it in the world.*



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to earn the right to eat of the tree of life:

Revelation 2:7 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; *To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to win the crown of life:

Revelation 2:10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried; and ye shall have tribulation ten days: *be thou faithful unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be eligible to eat the hidden manna and be given a white stone:

Revelation 2:17 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches; *To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him a white stone, and in the stone a new name written, which no man knoweth saving he that receiveth it.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to qualify to have authority over nations:

Revelation 2:26 *And he that overcometh, and keepeth My works unto the end, to him will I give power over the nations:*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid displeasing Jesus:

Revelation 3:1-3 : And unto the angel of the church in Sardis write; These things saith He that hath the seven Spirits of God, and the seven stars; *I know thy works, that thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead. Be watchful, and strengthen the things which remain, that are ready to die: for I have not found thy works perfect before God. Remember therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast, and repent.* If therefore thou shalt not watch, I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be eligible for a white garment and a permanent place in the book of life:

Revelation 3:5 *He that overcometh, the same shall be clothed in white raiment; and I will not blot out his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before My Father, and before His angels.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be among those that Jesus acknowledges He loves:

Revelation 3:8,9 I know thy works: behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man can shut it: *for thou hast a little strength, and hast kept My word, and hast not denied My name. Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be kept safe from the hour of trial:

Revelation 3:10 *Because thou hast kept the word of My patience,* I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to qualify as a pillar in God’s sanctuary and have God’s name on you:

Revelation 3:12 *Him that overcometh* will I make a pillar in the temple of My God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of My God, and the name of the city of My God, which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down out of heaven from My God: and I will write upon him My new name.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to obtain wealth, clothing and sight from Jesus:

Revelation 3:18 : *I counsel thee to buy of Me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve, that thou mayest see.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to have joint seating with Jesus:

1. Romans 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; *if so be that we suffer with Him*, that we may be also glorified together.
2. Revelation 3:21 *To him that overcometh* will I grant to sit with Me in My throne, even as I also overcame, and am set down with My Father in His throne.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to avoid Babylon’s plight:

Revelation 18:4 And I heard another voice from heaven, saying, *Come out of her, my people, that ye be not partakers of her sins, and that ye receive not of her plagues.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be clothed in white linen when He comes:

Revelation 19:7,8 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to Him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and *His wife hath made herself ready*. And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen *is the righteousness of saints*.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to inherit all good things:

Revelation 21:7 He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be My son.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to remain a member of God’s household:

Hebrews 3:6-8 But Christ as a son over His own house; whose house are we, *if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end*. Wherefore (as the Holy Ghost saith, Today if ye will hear His voice, *harden not your hearts*, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the wilderness:

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to escape chastisement:

Hebrews 12:8 *But if ye be without chastisement, whereof all are partakers, then are ye bastards, and not sons.* [You can escape chastisement by confessing to be a child of God, but not listening to Him. You are thus, illegitimate.]



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to worship God uselessly:

Mark 7:6-13 He answered and said unto them, Well hath Esaias prophesied of you hypocrites, as it is written, This people honoureth Me with their lips, but their heart is far from Me. Howbeit in vain do they worship Me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men. *For laying aside the commandment of God, ye hold the tradition of men, as the washing of pots and cups: and many other such like things ye do.* And He said unto them, *Full well ye reject the commandment of God, that ye may keep your own tradition.* For Moses said, Honour thy father and thy mother; and, Whoso curseth father or mother, let him die the death: But ye say, If a man shall say to his father or mother, It is Corban, that is to say, a gift, by whatsoever thou mightest be profited by me; he shall be free. And ye suffer him no more to do ought for his father or his mother; **Making the word of God of none effect through your tradition, which ye have delivered: and many such like things do ye.**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to miss the wedding feast:

Matthew 22:2-14 The kingdom of heaven is like unto a certain king, which made a marriage for his son, and sent forth his servants to call them that were bidden to the wedding: and they would not come. Again, he sent forth other servants, saying, Tell them which are bidden, Behold, I have prepared my dinner: my oxen and my fatlings are killed, and all things are ready: come unto the marriage. *But they made light of it, and went their ways, one to his farm, another to his merchandise:* And the remnant took his servants, and entreated them spitefully, and slew them. But when the king heard thereof, he was wroth: and he sent forth his armies, and destroyed those murderers, and burned up their city. Then saith he to his servants, The wedding is ready, but they which were bidden were not worthy. Go ye therefore into the highways, and as many as ye shall find, bid to the marriage. So those servants went out into the highways, and gathered together all as many as they found, both bad and good: and the wedding was furnished with guests. And when the king came in to see the guests, *he saw there a man which had not on a wedding garment:* And he saith unto him, Friend, how camest thou in hither not having a wedding garment? And he was speechless. Then said the king to the servants, Bind him hand and foot, and take him away, and cast him into outer darkness; there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. For many are called, but few are chosen. [The wedding garment- Romans 13:14 But put ye on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make not provision for the flesh, to fulfil the lusts thereof.]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to miss the blessings:

Luke 19:44 And shall lay thee even with the ground, and thy children within thee; and they shall not leave in thee one stone upon another; because thou knewest not the time of thy visitation. [Amplified Version says, *because you did not come progressively to recognize and know and understand from observation and experience the time of your visitation.*]

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to miss the rapture:

Summary -- Don't protect your spirit. Don't watch and pray.

1. Matthew 24:37-42 But as the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be. Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left. Two women shall be grinding at the mill; the one shall be taken, and the other left. *Watch therefore: for ye know not what hour your Lord doth come.* But know this, that if the goodman of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up. Therefore be ye also ready: for in such an hour as ye think not the Son of man cometh.

2. Luke 21: 34-36 And *take heed to yourselves, lest at any time your hearts be overcharged with surfeiting, and drunkenness, and cares of this life, and so that day come upon you unawares.* For as a snare shall it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. *Watch ye therefore, and pray always, that ye may be accounted worthy to escape all these things that shall come to pass, and to stand before the Son of man.*

3. I Thessalonians 4:17 For the Lord Himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first: Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

4. I Thessalonians 5:1-9 But of the times and the seasons, brethren, ye have no need that I write unto you. For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night. For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape. But ye, brethren, are not in darkness, that that day should overtake you as a thief. Ye are all the children of light, and the children of the day: we are not of the night, nor of darkness. *Therefore let us not sleep, as do others; but let us watch and be sober.* For they that sleep, sleep in the night; and they that be drunken are drunken in the night. But let us, who are of the day, *be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love; and for an helmet, the hope of salvation.* For God hath not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ,

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be excluded from God's rest:

Hebrews 3:18,19 And to whom sware He that they should not enter into His rest, but to them that believed not? So we see *that they could not enter in because of unbelief.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be excluded from the city of God:

1. Revelation 21:27 *And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.*
2. Revelation 22:14,15 Blessed are they that do His commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city. *For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to keep the good news from benefiting you:

Hebrews 4:2 For unto us was the gospel preached, as well as unto them: but the word preached did not profit them, *not being mixed with faith* in them that heard it.



## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be destroyed from among the people:

Acts 3:22,23 : For Moses truly said unto the fathers, A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me; Him (Jesus) *shall ye hear in all things whatsoever He shall say unto you.* And it shall come to pass, that *every soul, which will not hear that prophet, shall be destroyed from among the people.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be led astray:

Wherefore I was grieved with that generation, and said, They do alway err [and a led astray, the Amplified Version says.] in their heart; and **they have not known My ways**. So I sware in My wrath, They shall not enter into My rest.) Take heed, brethren, *lest there be in any of you an evil heart of unbelief, in departing from the living God*. But exhort one another daily, while it is called To day; *lest any of you be hardened through the deceitfulness of sin*.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to produce evil instead of good:

Romans 3:11-18 *There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.* They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one. Their throat is an open sepulcher; with their tongues they have used deceit; the poison of asps is under their lips: Whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness: Their feet are swift to shed blood: Destruction and misery are in their ways: And the way of peace have they not known: There is no fear of God before their eyes.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to come under the power of sin:

1. Romans 1:24,25 Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves: *Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen.*
2. Ephesians 4:17-19 This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that ye henceforth walk not as other Gentiles *walk, in the vanity of their mind, having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart: Who being past feeling have given themselves over unto lasciviousness, to work all uncleanness with greediness.*
3. II Thessalonians 2:8-12 And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the Spirit of His mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of His coming: Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders, and with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: *That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to darken your mind:

Summary -- Worship someone or something more than God.

1. Romans 1:21 Because that, when they knew God, *they glorified Him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.* [Amplified Version says, vain imaginations, foolish reasonings and stupid speculations- and their senseless minds were darkened.]

2. Ephesians 2:2,3 Wherein in time past *ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:* Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, *fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind;* [Amplified Version says, *our cravings dictated by our senses and dark imaginings*] and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

3. Ephesians 4:17-19 This I say therefore, and testify in the Lord, that ye henceforth walk not as other Gentiles walk, in the vanity of their mind, having the understanding darkened, *being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart.* Who being past feeling have given themselves over unto lasciviousness, to work all uncleanness with greediness.

4. II Timothy 4:3,4 For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; *but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears; and they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables.*

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to lose your salvation:

Summary -- [If you are being drawn away from God, take heed. If you have fallen into sin and you desire to come back, this is not for you. I say that because those who have forfeited their salvation are no longer drawn to God by the Holy Spirit.]

1. Hebrews 6:4-8 For it is impossible for those who were once *enlightened*, and *have tasted of the heavenly gift*, and were *made partakers of the Holy Ghost*, and *have tasted the good word of God*, and the powers of the world to come, if they shall fall away, to renew them again unto repentance; **seeing they crucify to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put Him to an open shame.** For the earth which drinketh in the rain that cometh oft upon it, and bringeth forth herbs meet for them by whom it is dressed, receiveth blessing from God: But that **which beareth thorns and briers is rejected**, and is nigh unto cursing; whose end is to be burned.

2. Hebrews 10:21-27 And having an high priest over the house of God; let us *draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith*, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water. *Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering;* (for He is faithful that promised;) **And let us consider one another to provoke unto love and to good works:** Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; *but exhorting one another.* and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching. **For if we sin willfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins,** But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries.

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

3. Hebrews 12:22-25 But ye are come unto mount Sion, and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels, to the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, and to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, *and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things* than that of Abel. **See that ye refuse not Him that speaketh. For if they escaped not who refused him that spake on earth, much more shall not we escape, if we turn away from Him that speaketh from heaven:**

4. II Peter 2:20,21 For if after they have escaped the pollutions of the world through the knowledge of the Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ, they are again entangled therein, and overcome, *the latter end is worse with them than the beginning.* **For it had been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness, than, after they have known it, to turn from the holy commandment delivered unto them.**

## The Ultimate “How To” Book

### How to be doomed:

1. Philippians 3:18,19 (For many walk, of whom I have told you often, and now tell you even weeping, that they are the enemies of the cross of Christ: *Whose end is destruction, whose God is their belly, and whose glory is in their shame, who mind earthly things.*
2. II Thessalonians 2:12 That they all might be damned *who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.*
3. Titus 1:15,16 Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled. *They profess that they know God; but in works they deny him, being abominable, and disobedient, and unto every good work reprobate.*
4. Titus 3:10,11 A man that *is a heretic* after the first and second admonition reject; knowing that he that is such is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned of himself.